

st

PREP

SECOND TERM



ALADWAA

Gem

2026

FIRST



جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية المحتوي التعليمي الخاص بكتاب الوزارة مملوكة لوزارة التربية والتعليم والبحث العلمي

ENGLISH

for Preparatory Schools

المصف
الأول
الإعدادي
7
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

Prepared by
Said Darahem

&

A Group of Experts in Teaching English



الاسم:

رقم الموبايل:



امسح الكود واحصل على
لينكات الأعضاء الرسمية

Follow Us



16766

www.aladwaa.com

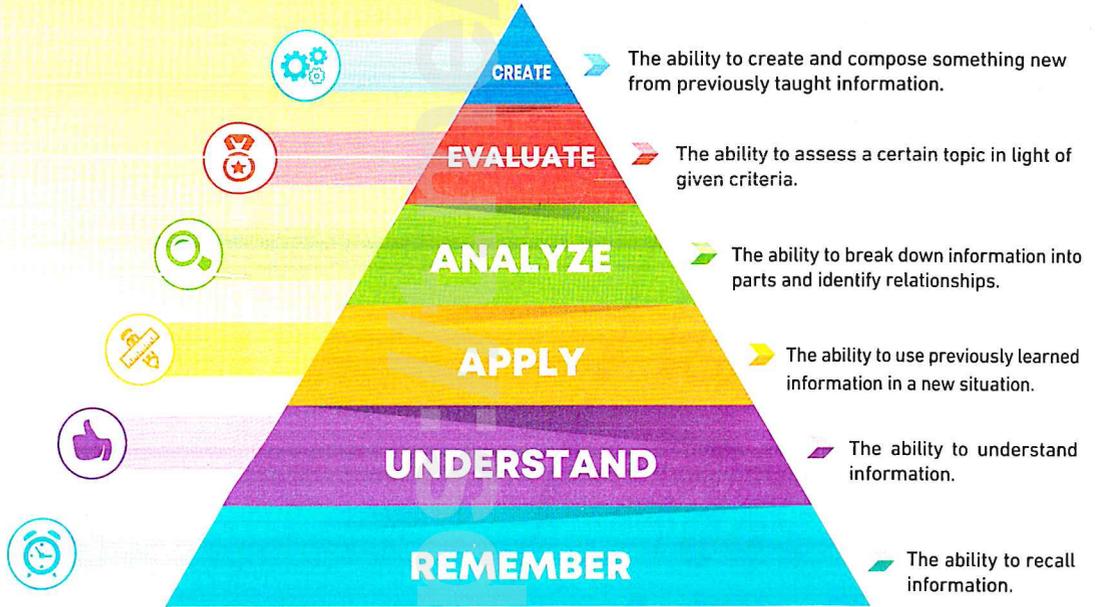
BLOOM'S TAXONOMY

تصنيف بلوم

تم الاعتماد في
إعداد التدريبات والأنشطة
داخل الكتاب
على تصنيف بلوم

نواتج التعلم والمستويات المعرفية

تمثل نواتج التعلم ما ينبغي أن يعرفه الطالب ويكون قادرًا على أدائه بعد دراسته لمقرر دراسي معين، بينما تشمل المستويات المعرفية جميع النشاطات الذهنية أو العقلية، ويبدأ تصنيف نواتج التعلم في المجال المعرفي من العمليات العقلية البسيطة ويمتد إلى العمليات الأكثر تعقيداً (تصنيف بلوم)، ويوضح الشكل التالي هذه العمليات:



ستجد تلك الأيقونات بجانب كل سؤال في تدريبات الأضواء؛ لمعرفة تصنيف السؤال وفقاً لهم بلوم المعرفي.



ALADWAAR JOURNEY

من أجل رحلة تعليمية ممتعة تضمن لك التفوق

قمنا بتقسيم كل درس إلى:

Assess Your Progress

تحديد مستواك
في نهاية كل اختبار

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)

1. Listen to the text and answer the following questions:
A) Write True (T) or False (F):
1. The mummies moved to an old museum. ()
2. People watched the big parade on TV. ()

Test Yourself

اختبار على
كل درس

Practice

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1. The Pharaoh's tomb has many royal _____ that showed Egypt's ancient heritage.

Practice

تدريبات متنوعة
ومتدرجة المستوى

STUDY

Part 1

LESSON 1: The Royal Palace
LESSON 2: Honoring the past, building the future

A VOCABULARY LESSON 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية
costumes (n) الحفلات
preserve (d) (v) يحفظ

Study
شرح مبسط ووافٍ

Contents

Start Smart 5

Module 4

Unit 7 Reviving the Spirit of Civilization 8
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7 54

Unit 8

Family Values and Roles 57
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 8 98
Module 4 Question Bank on Units 7 & 8 101

Module 5

Unit 9 Making it Yourself 105
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 9 149

Unit 10

Helping Others 155
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 10 197
Module 5 Question Bank on Units 9 & 10 200

Review 3 152

Module 6

Unit 11 The Natural World 204
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 11 247

Unit 12

I Will Be Responsible 250
Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 12 291
Module 6 Question Bank on Units 11 & 12 294

Review 4 297



End of the Book
Listening Texts 300
Challenging Questions Answers 302

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادي للعام الدراسي 2025-2026

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

English for Preparatory Schools - Year First (SB)

MONTH(S)	FEBRUARY	MARCH	APRIL	MAY
UNITS	Units 7 + 8	Units 9 + 10	Units 11 + 12	General Revision

1 Finish the following dialog:

Mariam and Karim are discussing a class presentation about role models in Egypt.

Mariam: I think today's presentation about role models in Egypt was really inspiring.

Karim: Yeah, it made me think about who I actually look up to. (1).....?

Mariam: For me, my biggest role model is my grandmother.

Karim: Really? (2).....?

Mariam: She's hardworking and always encourages me to reach my dreams. What about you?

Karim: (3).....

Mariam: True! Prof. Magdy Yaqoub shows what it means to make a positive difference in society.

Karim: Exactly. I hope more young people (4).....

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Last week, my school invited a young Egyptian athlete, Salma Nasser, to speak about her journey. She shared how she trained every day before sunrise and balanced her studies with sports. Salma said her biggest **challenge** was staying motivated when results were slow, but she never gave up. She also explained that a "small step" can one day lead to a big achievement. After the talk, many students felt inspired to set new goals. For me, her story was a reminder that discipline isn't just about hard work—it's about believing in yourself even when things feel difficult.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is
 - a) A student describes her school routine
 - b) An athlete explains why she stopped training
 - c) A speaker inspires students with her life journey
 - d) A teacher talks about the importance of sports
2. In the text, the word "challenge" means to

a) success	b) difficulty	c) award	d) opportunity
------------	---------------	----------	----------------

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What time did Salma usually train?
4. What does the underlined word "her" refer to?
5. Why do you think Salma's story inspired many students to set new goals?

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. "Visual" is related to the sense of
a) hearing b) smell c) taste d) sight
2. He is to admit his mistake. He is afraid to say he did something wrong.
a) scared b) hungry c) excited d) relaxed
3. To make the negative meaning of "evaluate", add the prefix ".....".
a) re- b) mis- c) pre- d) over-
4. I want to find a good after I graduate.
a) education b) impact c) job d) achievement
5. To means not to listen or give attention to someone or something.
a) explore b) create c) protect d) ignore
6. If everyone thinks well before taking a decision, they won't mistakes.
a) read b) make c) do d) develop

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We (go) to the museum yesterday and learned a lot about ancient Egypt.
2. She (prepare) her presentation now, so she can't come to the phone.
3. You (not park) here. It's for teachers only.
4. He usually (walk) to school, but today his dad drove him.
5. They (visit) the new science center this weekend.
6. If you study hard, you (get) great results.

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It's too dark to read this book. (can't)
.....
2. Omar drinks coffee every morning. (usually)
.....
3. If you don't wear a helmet, you might get hurt. (should)
.....
4. They plan to start a new project next month. (going to)
.....
5. Don't walk on the grass in this park. (mustn't)
.....

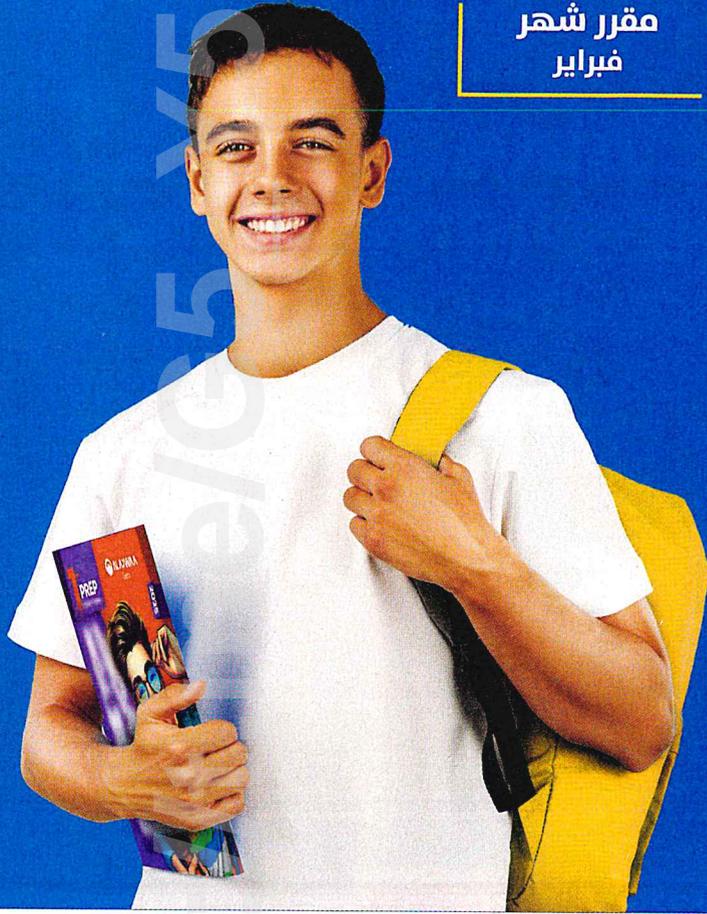
6 Write a biography of (80 – 100) words describing your role model.

.....
.....

4

مقرر شهر
فبراير

MODULE



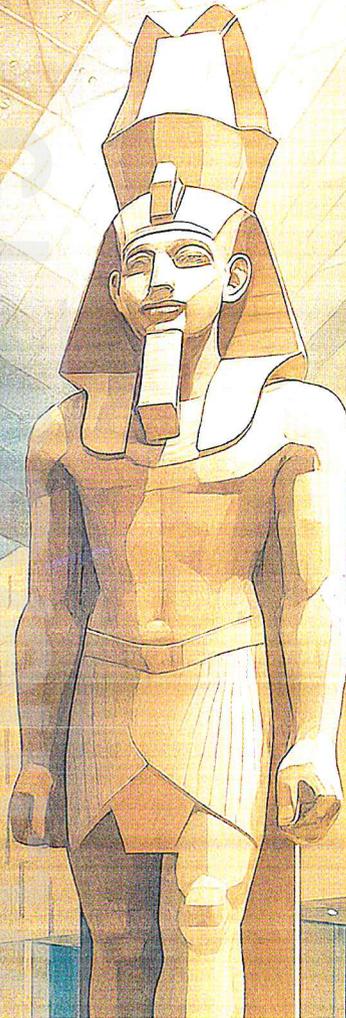
Unit 7 Reviving the Spirit of Civilization

Unit 8 Family Values and Roles

Module 4 Question Bank

Unit 7

REVIVING THE SPIRIT OF CIVILIZATION



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify main ideas in texts about Egypt's national heritage projects, museums, and cultural events.
- Understand descriptions of historical ceremonies.
- Infer meaning of new vocabulary from context.

Listening

- Listen for key information in discussions about Egyptian cultural projects and national celebrations.

Speaking

- Share opinions and ideas about how Egypt protects its history.
- Engage in meaningful discussions about the importance of museums, monuments, and ancient sites.

- Ask and answer questions about events, locations, and historical figures accurately.

Language

- Use modal verbs for necessity, obligation, advice, and prohibition: **must, have to, should, mustn't, don't have to.**
- Apply modal verbs correctly in speaking, reading comprehension, and writing tasks.

Writing

- Write short advice blogs and paragraphs offering guidance on protecting Egyptian heritage.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

costumes (n)	أزياء	preserve (d) (v)	يحافظ على
ceremonies (n)	طقوس/مراسم	royal mummies (n)	موميאות ملكية
heritage (n)	تراث	vehicle (n)	مركبة /وسيلة نقل
parade (n)	موكب/استعراض	witness (ed) (v/n)	يشهد/شاهد

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

amaze (d) (v)	يدهش/يبهر	musician (n)	عازف/موسيقيار
ancient (adj)	قديم	performance (n)	أداء/تمثيل
beauty (n)	جمال	place (d) (v)	يضع
celebration (n)	احتفال	pharaoh (n)	فرعون
civilization (n)	حضارة	priceless (adj)	لا يقدر بثمن
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	pride (n)	فخر
crowd (n)	حشد/جمهور	purpose (n)	غرض
culture (n)	ثقافة	respect (ed) (v/n)	يحترم/احترام
decorate (d) (v)	يزين/يجمل	route (n)	طريق/مسار
gather (ed) (v)	يجمع/يتجمع	security team (n)	فريق الأمن
generation (n)	جيل	soldier (n)	جندي
glorious (adj)	مهيب/مشرف	sports outfits (n)	أزياء رياضية
honor (ed) (v)	يكرم	symbol (n)	رمز
inspire (d) (v)	يلهم	tourist clothes (n)	ملابس سياحية
monuments (n)	آثار	transfer (red) (v)	ينقل/يحرك

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a set of actions	مجموعة من الأفعال	come alive	ينبض بالحياة/يصبح حيًا
across	عبر/في جميع أنحاء	in the same way	بنفس الطريقة
along	على طول/بمحاذاة	live on television	مباشر على التلفاز

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition | لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

move of	حركة/انتقال لـ	take part in	يشارك فى
move to	ينتقل إلى	take place	يحدث/يقام
move together	يتحرك معا	set of	مجموعة من
once-in-a-lifetime	مرة واحدة فى العمر	see with your own eyes	بأم عينك/ترى بنفسك
pass from ... to ...	ينتقل من ... إلى ...	show respect for	يظهر الاحترام لـ

Read and complete with a word from the list:

ceremonies – to – take – make

- The school party will place on Friday.
- The festival includes special that people enjoy.
- Sami wants to move a bigger city in the future.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	grand (adj)	فخم/عظيم/ضخم
buried (adj)	مدفون	lined (adj)	مصطف
duty (n)	واجب	restore (d) (v)	يرمم/يعيد

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

ancestors (n)	أسلاف/أجداد	historical sites (n)	أماكن تاريخية
artifact (n)	قطعة أثرية	key (adj)	أساسي/أولى
bury (y) (ied) (v)	يدفن	necessary (adj)	ضروري
citizen (n)	مواطن	original (adj)	أصلي
condition (n)	حالة	path (n)	طريق/مسار
creative (adj)	مبدع	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى
damage (d) (v)	يحصر	roots (n)	جذور/أصول
discover (ed) (v)	يكتشف	rules (n)	قواعد
expert (n)	خبير	sharp (adj)	حاد
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	soil (n)	تربة
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع	strict (adj)	صارم/حازم
forbidden (adj)	ممنوع/محظور	treasure (n)	كنز

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

bring ... back to	يعيد .. إلى	learn about	يتعلم عن
cover with	يغطي بـ	lined with	ممتلئة بـ
duty to	واجب لـ	make ... easy	يجعل ... سهلاً
follow strict rules	يتبع قواعد صارمة	restore the past	ترميم الماضي
key to	أساس لـ	wear gloves	يرتدي قفازات

Read and complete with a word from the list:

make – discover – do – protect

- 1 Scientists new species أنواع/فصائل in the rainforest every year.
- 2 It is important to historical buildings for future generations.
- 3 Clear instructions tasks easy for students.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
bring	يحضّر/يجلب	brought	brought
shine	تسطع/تشرق	shone	shone
wear	يرتدي/يلبس	wore	worn

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
ancient	قديم	very old	قديم جداً	new/modern	جديد/حديث
forbidden	ممنوع/محظور	prohibited	محرم	allowed	مسموح
grand	فخم/كبير/ضخم	large/impressive	ضخم/مبهر	small/tiny	صغير/ضئيل
inspire	يلهم	encourage	يشجع	discourage	يثبط عزيمته
necessary	ضروري	essential	ضروري	unnecessary	غير ضروري
preserve	يحافظ/يبقى	protect	يحمي	damage	يتلف
priceless	لا يقدر بثمن	valuable	قيم	worthless	لا قيمة له
restore	يرمم/يعيد	rebuild/repair	يعيد بناء/يصلح	destroy/damage	يدمر

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
celebrate (v)	يحتفل	-ion	تحول إلى اسم	celebration (n)	احتفال
perform (v)	يؤدي	-ance		performance (n)	أداء/تمثيل
music (n)	موسيقى	-ian	تحول إلى اسم فاعل	musician (n)	عازف/موسيقيار
glory (n)	مجد	-ous	تحول إلى صفة	glorious (adj)	مهيّب/مشرف
gold (n)	ذهب	-en		golden (adj)	ذهبي
power (n)	قوة	-ful		powerful (adj)	قوى
tradition (n)	تقليد/عرف	-al		traditional (adj)	تقليدي
price (n)	ثمن	-less	تعطى عكس الكلمة	priceless (adj)	لا يقدر بثمن
archaeology (n)	علم الآثار	-ist	تحول إلى اسم فاعل	archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار
create (v)	يبدع	-ive	تحول إلى صفة	creative (adj)	مبدع
store (v)	يخزن	re-	تعطى معنى الإعادة	restore (v)	يرمم/يعيد

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Good stories can inspire children. "Inspire" is the same meaning as ".....".
a) allowed b) discourage c) encourage d) essential
- These historical artifacts are extremely priceless. The antonym of "priceless" is ".....".
a) small b) weak c) worthless d) modern
- The students will perform a play at the school festival. We get the noun of "perform" by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -er b) -ous c) -less d) -ance
- It is necessary to wear a helmet when riding a bike. To form the opposite of "necessary," we add the prefix ".....".
a) un- b) dis- c) im- d) in-
- The pharaoh's tomb was filled with ancient treasures. The synonym of "ancient" is ".....".
a) modern b) huge c) very old d) small

Reading Text

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What do you know about Egypt's royal mummies?
- 2 Why is it important to preserve them?

 Read the following text. What message did Egypt send to the world through the parade?

SB page 14

"The Pharaohs' Golden Parade"

On Saturday, April 3, 2021, Egypt amazed the world with a once-in-a-lifetime event—the move of 22 royal mummies⁽¹⁾ from the Egyptian Museum in Tahrir Square to the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization⁽²⁾.

The streets of Cairo shone with golden lights as crowds gathered to witness history come alive. The mummies of great pharaohs such as Ramses II and Queen Hatshepsut began their journey⁽³⁾ through the city in a grand parade⁽⁴⁾ called "The Pharaohs' Golden Parade."

Each mummy was carefully placed in a specially designed vehicle decorated with ancient symbols⁽⁵⁾ and protected by security teams. Along the route⁽⁶⁾, soldiers, musicians, and performers in traditional costumes⁽⁷⁾ honored Egypt's glorious past with performances inspired by ancient ceremonies.

People across the world watched the event live on television and online. The parade was not just a ceremony⁽⁸⁾; it was a message to the world that Egypt has preserved its history with pride and must continue protecting its priceless heritage⁽⁹⁾ for future generations.



(1) موميائوات

(2) المتحف القومي للحضارة المصرية

(3) رحلة

(4) موكب ضخم

(5) رموز

(6) طريق

(7) أزياء تقليدية

(8) مراسم/طقوس

(9) تراث لا يقدر بثمن

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 When and where did the parade take place?
.....
- 2 What was special about the vehicles carrying the mummies?
.....
- 3 Name two of the famous Pharaohs mentioned in the text.
.....
- 4 What does the parade show about Egypt's respect for its history?
.....

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 Why do you think many tourists visit Egypt?
- 2 What do you know about mummies?

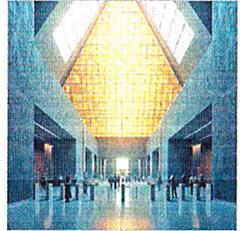
Listen to the following text and answer the questions.

It is our duty to protect our history and **preserve**⁽¹⁾ our ancient treasures for the future. Egyptian cities are lined with tourists who want to see how much Egypt **respects**⁽²⁾ its grand **civilization**⁽³⁾ and **honors**⁽⁴⁾ its ancestors.

Scientists⁽⁵⁾ and archaeologists must follow strict rules to protect the mummies. Some of them were buried thousands of years ago, so the experts must wear gloves and use **soft tools**⁽⁶⁾. They mustn't use anything **sharp**⁽⁷⁾ that might damage them.

Citizens should visit museums and historical sites to learn about their roots. By exploring **monuments**⁽⁸⁾, they discover how powerful and creative their ancestors were. People don't need to be experts to enjoy Ancient Egypt; museums help restore the past and make it easy for everyone to **understand**⁽⁹⁾. Teachers always **remind**⁽¹⁰⁾ us that respecting our history is the key to building a successful future.

SB page 16



(1) يقي/يحافظ على

(2) يحترم

(3) حضارة

(4) يفخر بـ/يحترم

(5) العلماء

(6) أدوات ليينة/رفيفة

(7) حاد

(8) آثار

(9) يفهم

(10) يذكر

SB

Post-listening questions:

- 1 What must scientists and archaeologists do to protect the mummies?

.....

- 2 What mustn't they do while working?

.....

- 3 What should citizens do to learn more about their history?

.....

- 4 Why don't people have to be experts to enjoy Ancient Egypt?

.....

- 5 What lesson do teachers give about the past and future?

.....

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات			
buried	مدفون	put in the ground and covered with soil ⁽¹⁾	(1) تربة
costumes	أزياء	clothes worn for a special event or tradition ⁽²⁾	(2) تقليد
grand	كبير/ضخم	very large, important, or impressive ⁽³⁾	(3) رائع/مذهل
heritage	تراث/موروث	important history, culture, and traditions passed from generation to generation	(4) ممر/طريق
(be) lined	مصطف	to be placed along the sides of a street or path ⁽⁴⁾	(5) طابور
parade	موكب/استعراض	a line ⁽⁵⁾ of people or things moving together for celebration	(6) أصلي
restore	يرمم/يعيد	to bring something back to its original ⁽⁶⁾ condition	
ceremonies	طقوس/مراسم	a set of actions done in the same way for a long time	
royal mummies	مومياءات ملكية	the preserved bodies of ancient kings and queens	
vehicle	مركبة/وسيلة نقل	a car, bus, or machine used to travel from place to place	
witness	يشهد	to see something happen with your own eyes	

1 continue + v+ing/ to + inf.

يستمر

- Egypt must **continue protecting** its priceless heritage for future generations.

2 key to + v+ing

مفتاح لـ

- Our history is the **key to building** a successful future.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 are the preserved bodies of ancient kings and queens.

- | | |
|-------------|------------------|
| a) Stones | b) Royal mummies |
| c) Vehicles | d) Costumes |

2 Teamwork is the key to success.

- | | | | |
|------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| a) achieve | b) achieving | c) achieved | d) achieves |
|------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|

3 Scientists must continue ancient artifacts to understand our history better.

- | | | | |
|-------------|----------|----------------|------------|
| a) studying | b) study | c) to studying | d) studied |
|-------------|----------|----------------|------------|

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Pharaoh's tomb has many royal that showed Egypt's ancient heritage.
 a) ceremonies b) mummies c) outfits d) clothes
2. We will celebrate her birthday with a small party. We form the noun from "celebrate" by deleting "e" and adding the suffix ".....".
 a) -er b) -ous c) -ion d) -ation
3. The golden mask of Tutankhamun is so beautiful that it can every visitor to the museum.
 a) damage b) continue c) admire d) amaze
4. The parade moved slowly through the streets of Cairo with great and joy.
 a) tradition b) pride c) journey d) symbol
5. "Restore" means to rebuild and repair, while its opposite is ".....".
 a) apply b) reply c) destroy d) repair
6. mean cars, buses, or machines used to travel from place to place.
 a) Ceremonies b) Symbols c) Mummies d) Vehicles
7. The museum decided to the royal mummies to protect Egypt's glorious history.
 a) inspire b) decorate c) preserve d) witness
8. At night, the city begins to alive with lights and music.
 a) give b) move c) come d) take
9. are clothes worn for a special event or tradition.
 a) Mummies b) Costumes c) Vehicles d) Customs
10. Soldiers and the security team helped the Pharaoh's mummies.
 a) witness b) preserve c) amaze d) transfer

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

vehicle – modern – ancient – parade – golden

Everyone in Egypt was excitingly waiting for the big event to start soon. The royal mummies (1) moved slowly through the busy streets of Cairo. Many people watched the (2) kings and queens move to a new home. Each mummy traveled in a special (3) that looked like a boat. The cars were (4) and very shiny in the bright light. It was a truly wonderful day for our country's history.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. To means to bring something back to its original condition.
a) preserve b) protect c) treasure d) restore
2. A/An discovered tools from an ancient civilization.
a) chemist b) archaeologist c) engineer d) doctor
3. The teacher is, but fair with all students.
a) strict b) easier c) amazed d) bored
4. The leader used his power to help others. To get the adjective of "power", add the suffix ".....".
a) -ful b) -ment c) -ly d) -or
5. Pollution can damage the environment. The word "damage" is an antonym of ".....".
a) restore b) destroy c) create d) discover
6. She is a/an in computer science.
a) expert b) experience c) buried d) damage
7. Amina visited the Grand Egyptian Museum to learn about her
a) true b) sharp c) roots d) leaves
8. The treasure was deep in the sand.
a) worn b) buried c) reminded d) born
9. The knife is very, so handle it with care.
a) slow b) clean c) sharp d) small
10. Ancient tell us stories about the past.
a) moments b) monuments c) key d) honor

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

archaeologist – wear – strict – sharp – explore

My uncle is a famous scientist who loves learning about history. He is an (1)..... who works in the hot desert every day. He follows (2)..... rules to protect the mummies that were buried years ago. He must (3)..... gloves and use soft tools. He mustn't use anything (4)..... that might damage them.

Modal verbs for necessity & advice

(must/mustn't, have to/don't have to, should/shouldn't)

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

Tamer is getting ready for school. He (**must/mustn't**) brush his teeth every morning. His little brother Sami (**has to/doesn't have to**) put on his uniform, too. Tamer (**should/shouldn't**) eat a healthy breakfast before leaving. He (**must/mustn't**) forget his school bag. Sami (**must/mustn't**) follow the school rules.

Obligation/Necessity

الإلزام والضرورة

1. must

We use "**must**" for a strong rule, important obligation, or something you feel necessary.

نستخدم كلمة "**must**" للإشارة إلى قاعدة قوية، أو التزام مهم، أو شيء تشعر أنه ضروري.

مصدر الفعل. **must** + inf. + الفاعل

e.g. • You **must** follow the teacher's instructions.

• Drivers **must** stop at a red light.

لاحظ: **must = It's necessary/important to do**

2. have to / has to

We use "**have to/has to**" for something that is necessary because of rules - and when there is no other choice.

نستخدم "**have to/has to**" للتعبير عن شيء ضروري بسبب القواعد - وعندما لا يكون هناك خيار آخر.

مصدر الفعل. **have to** + inf. + اسم جمع

مصدر الفعل. **has to** + inf. + اسم مفرد

e.g. • We **have to** wear our school uniform every day.

• Laila **has to** take her medicine 3 times a day.

Q. word + **do / does** + اسم جمع / I/you/we/they + **have to** + inf. مصدر الفعل?

e.g. A: When **do** they **have to** arrive?

B: They **have to** arrive at seven.

e.g. A: What **does** Nabil **have to** do today?

B: He **has to** clean the floor.

لاحظ: **have/has to = It's important/necessary to do**

Prohibition التحريم/النهي/المنع

3. mustn't

We use "mustn't" to express that something is not allowed.

نستخدم "mustn't" للتعبير عن أن شيء ما غير مسموح به.

Subject + mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. • You mustn't run in the corridors.

mustn't = It isn't allowed = It's prohibited/forbidden : لاحظ

Lack of necessity عدم الضرورة

4. don't/doesn't have to

We use "don't have to/doesn't have to" to show that something is not necessary.

نستخدم "don't have to/doesn't have to" لبيان أن الشيء ليس ضرورياً. (لك حرية التصرف أو الاختيار).

مصدر الفعل I/You/We/They + don't have to + inf. اسم جمع

مصدر الفعل He/She/It + doesn't have to + inf. اسم مفرد

e.g. • You don't have to bring your laptop. You can if you want to.

• Sara doesn't have to go to school today. It's a vacation.

don't/ doesn't have to = It isn't necessary/important to do. : لاحظ

Advice النصيحة

5. should/shouldn't

A) We use "should" for a good idea/helpful advice.

نستخدم كلمة "should" لتقديم فكرة جيدة/نصيحة مفيدة.

Subject + should + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. • You should do your homework before playing.

• We should book our tickets early to get a discount خصم.

should = I advise you/ It's a good idea/It's better : لاحظ

B) We use "shouldn't" for something advised not to do.

نستخدم كلمة "shouldn't" لشيء ننصح بعدم القيام به.

Subject + shouldn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. • You shouldn't waste your time.

shouldn't = I advise you not/ It isn't a good idea/ It's a bad idea : لاحظ

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. To be healthy, you eat your vegetables every day.

a) should	b) shouldn't	c) mustn't	d) has to
-----------	--------------	------------	-----------
2. In the library, students be quiet and read their books.

a) mustn't	b) must	c) don't have to	d) has to
------------	---------	------------------	-----------
3. Aida wear a uniform because she is at school today.

a) has to	b) have to	c) mustn't	d) shouldn't
-----------	------------	------------	--------------
4. The traffic light is red, so the cars stop now.

a) must	b) mustn't	c) don't have to	d) should
---------	------------	------------------	-----------
5. On the weekend, we get up early.

a) should	b) must	c) mustn't	d) don't have to
-----------	---------	------------	------------------

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- ▶ 1. It is important for Adam to finish his homework before dinner. (has to)

2. Driving fast near the school is not allowed for any car. (Drivers mustn't)

3. It is a good idea for you to brush your teeth. (should)

4. We don't need to wake up early on Friday. (have to)

5. It is necessary to be quiet and calm in the library. (must)

6. It is forbidden for students to run inside the classroom. (mustn't)

7. It is advisable for Salma to eat more fruits and vegetables. (should)

8. You are not allowed to talk while the teacher is speaking. (mustn't)

9. It is not necessary for Mazen to buy a new pen. (doesn't have to)

10. To stay healthy, it is necessary to drink plenty of water. (should)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- You play with matches because fire is very dangerous.
a) have to b) don't have to c) should d) mustn't
- Adam help his mother clean the kitchen after dinner tonight.
a) shouldn't b) should c) mustn't d) have to
- When it isn't raining, you take your umbrella with you.
a) should b) shouldn't c) have to d) don't have to
- The sign says you swim here because it is deep.
a) should b) don't have to c) mustn't d) have to
- My brother do his homework before he watches TV.
a) has to b) have to c) shouldn't d) mustn't

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Every morning, it is important to wash your face and hands. (should)
.....
- It is against the rules to park your car in here. (mustn't)
.....
- It is necessary for the players to listen to their coach. (have to)
.....
- It is necessary to wear a seat belt for your safety. (must)
.....
- It is a good idea to help your mother in the kitchen. (should)
.....
- Hoda does not need to bring her umbrella to the park. (doesn't have to)
.....
- It is banned to smoke inside the hospital or the clinic. (mustn't)
.....
- It is necessary for Omar to study hard for the test. (has to)
.....
- At night, it is a good idea to sleep very early. (should)
.....
- You are not allowed to leave trash on the floor. (mustn't)
.....

حلل الفيزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Discussing what Egyptians must or should do to protect their heritage

مناقشة ما يجب على المصريين فعله أو ينبغي عليهم فعله لحماية تراثهم

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| • I must ... | يجب أن |
| • We should ... | ينبغي أن |
| • We don't have to ... | ليس من الضروري أن |
| • We mustn't ... | لا يجب أن |

Examples

- I **must** learn more about our ancient history.
- We **should** visit museums to understand our civilization.
- We **don't have to** be experts to love our heritage.
- We **mustn't** damage or touch old monuments.

Speaking Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Ahmed and Laila are talking about protecting ancient places.

Ahmed : Hi Laila, do you like ancient places?

Laila : Yes, I do. I love our (1).....

Ahmed : What (2)..... we do there?

Laila : We must keep these places clean.

Ahmed : That is right. What else?

Laila : We (3)..... touch the old walls.

Ahmed : (4)..... is that important?

Laila : To keep them safe for a long time.

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com





How to write about protecting Egyptian heritage

كيف تكتب عن حماية التراث المصري

1 Places to Protect:

أماكن للحماية:

- The Pyramids are very old.
- The Sphinx is an important statue.
- Temples in Luxor are famous.
- Museums have many treasures.

2 How to Protect Heritage:

كيفية حماية التراث:

- We must keep places clean.
- We must not write on the walls.
- We must follow the rules.
- We must take care of old buildings.

Protecting Egyptian Heritage

حماية التراث المصري

3 Our Role as Egyptians:

دورنا كمصريين:

- We should respect our history.
- We must teach children about heritage.
- We should visit historical places.
- We must help protect them.

4 Why It Is Important:

لماذا هو مهم:

- Heritage shows our history.
- It helps us learn about the past.
- It attracts visitors to Egypt.
- It makes us proud.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“Protecting Egyptian Heritage”

Egyptian heritage is very important because it shows our long and rich history. We have many great places like the Pyramids, the Sphinx, and the temples in Luxor. We should protect these places and keep them clean. We must not write on the walls or damage old buildings. We should also teach children about our heritage so they learn to respect it. When we care for our heritage, many visitors come to Egypt, and we feel proud of our country. Protecting Egyptian heritage is our duty واجبتنا.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

- The mummies moved to an old museum. (.....)
- People watched the big parade on TV. (.....)

B) Listen again and complete:

- There were twenty-two in the parade.
- The cars looked like old boats.
- Everyone was to see the kings.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The old statue looked new again because experts worked hard to it carefully.
a) destroy b) restore c) look d) admire
- The museum displays معروضات were so that every visitor stopped to take photos.
a) forbidden b) worthless c) excited d) impressive
- The perform was really amazing. To correct the underlined word, add the suffix ".....".
a) -ness b) -ance c) -ity d) tion
- "Necessary" means something you must do; its opposite is formed by adding the prefix ".....".
a) ir- b) dis- c) im- d) un-

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

museum – heritage – inspire – protect – priceless

We learn a lot about the past from our long history. Egypt has a very rich (1) that is famous all over the world. We must try to (2) our old buildings for the future. You can see many statues at the new (3) in the city. The jewelry inside is (4) and beautiful. Visitors from every country come to see these amazing things every single year.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It is not necessary for us to go to the club today. (don't have to)
.....
2. It is advisable for Laila to wear a coat in winter. (should)
.....
3. It's necessary to look left and right before crossing the road. (must)
.....
4. It is forbidden to use your cell phone during the important exam. (mustn't)
.....

5 Complete the following dialog:

Omar is asking Hana what to do when we visit the Pyramids.

Omar : Hana, did you visit the Pyramids?

Hana : (1)....., Omar. They are very big.

Omar : How can we help protect them?

Hana : We must not (2)..... trash on the ground.

Omar : Good idea. (3)..... we walk carefully?

Hana : Yes, we should walk on the paths.

Omar : Can we (4)..... photos there?

Hana : Yes, but we must not use flash.

6 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"The National Museum of Egyptian Civilization"

.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It is necessary for Ayman to clean his room right now. (has to)
.....
2. It is a good idea for Rania to read a book. (should)
.....
3. It's very important to water the plants to grow. (must)
.....
4. In the museum, you are not allowed to touch the paintings. (mustn't)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★ < 50% Study again 50 : 64% Practice more 65 : 84% Take more exams 85 : 100% Well done!

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

artifact (n)	قطعة أثرية	magnificent (adj)	رائع/مذهل
civilization (n)	حضارة	symbol (n)	رمز
exhibition (n)	معرض	interactive (adj)	تفاعلي

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

achievement (n)	إنجاز	house (v) (d)	يستضيف
Ancient Egypt (n)	مصر القديمة	humans (n)	بشر/إنسان
archaeological (adj)	أثري	include (d) (v)	يشمل/يتضمن
artwork (n)	عمل/لوحة فنية	locate (d) (v)	يقع
celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل بـ	model (n)	نموذج
conservation center (n)	مركز حفظ/صيانة	national pride (n)	فخر وطني
culture event (n)	حدث ثقافي	promising (adj)	واعد/مبشر
digital guide (n)	دليل رقمي	separately (adv)	بشكل منفصل
display (ed) (v/n)	يعرض/عرض	sign (n)	لافتة/إشارة
education (n)	تعليم	square meter (n)	متر مربع
experience (d) (v)	يختبر/يجرب	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	tourism (n)	سياحة
fashion (n)	موضة	treasure (n)	كنز
foreign (adj)	أجنبي	welcome (v) (d)	يرحب بـ
glass front (n)	واجهه زجاجية	wonder (n)	عجبية/روعة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

in a way	بطريقة	in the heart of	في قلب/وسط
blend of	مزيج من	tell a story	يحكي قصة/يروى قصة

Read and complete with a word from the list:

with – of – symbol – interactive

- 1 The lesson is, so everyone joins and answers.
- 2 The festival offered a blend music, food, and cultural performances.
- 3 The flag is a of our country.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
build	يبني	built	built
show	يعرض	showed	shown

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
magnificent	رائع/مذهل	impressive	رائع/مبهر	terrible	فظيع
public	عام	shared/common	عام/مشترك	private	خاص
unique	فريد/مميز	special	خاص/مميز	normal/common	عادي/شائع
combine	يدمج/يمزج	blend	يمزج	separate	يفصل

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
promise (v)	يعد	-ing	تحول إلى صفة		promising (adj)	واعد/يبشر بالنجاح
culture (n)	ثقافة	-al			cultural (adj)	ثقافي
exhibit (v)	يعرض	-ion	تحول إلى اسم		exhibition (n)	معرض/عرض
conserve (v)	يخفظ	-ation			conservation (n)	حفظ/صيانة
achieve (v)	يحقق/ينجز	-ment			achievement (n)	إنجاز

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The synonym of "unique" is a word that means one-of-a-kind or very
 a) normal b) common c) special d) terrible
- 2 It's important to keep public places clean. The antonym of "public" is ".....".
 a) private b) normal c) national d) separate
- 3 We can combine our ideas to find a better solution. The opposite of "combine" is
 a) blend b) separate c) exhibit d) achieve

Reading Text

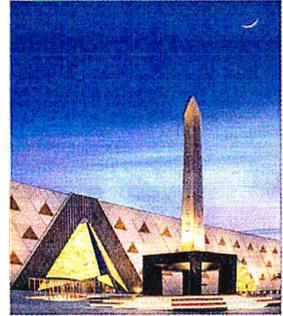
Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Why do people visit museums?
- 2 What do you think the Grand Egyptian Museum shows?

 Read the following text. Guess the meaning of the words in bold. *SB Page 18*

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)⁽¹⁾ is one of Egypt's most **magnificent** cultural projects. It is located near the Giza Pyramids. It stands as a bridge between Egypt's great past and its **promising**⁽²⁾ future. Designed with modern buildings, glass fronts, and large **exhibition** halls, the museum covers over 480,000 square meters, making it the world's largest **archaeological**⁽³⁾ museum for a single **civilization**.



The GEM will house more than 100,000 artifacts that tell the story of Ancient Egypt.

What makes the museum special is its **blend of**⁽⁴⁾ tradition and technology. **Interactive**⁽⁵⁾ displays, 3D **models**⁽⁶⁾, and digital guides allow visitors to explore Ancient Egypt in a new way. The GEM also includes a **conservation center**⁽⁷⁾, library, cinema, and spaces for workshops and cultural events.

More than just a museum, the Grand Egyptian Museum is a symbol of national pride. It celebrates Egypt's unique **heritage**⁽⁸⁾ while welcoming the world to experience the wonder of its civilization in the heart of Giza.

Post-reading question:

SB

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Grand Egyptian Museum is located near
a) Luxor b) Giza c) Cairo Airport d) Alexandria
- 2 The museum will display over artifacts.
a) 1,000 b) 10,000 c) 100,000 d) 1,000,000
- 3 The museum combines and technology.
a) art b) tradition c) fashion d) business

(1) المتحف المصري الكبير

(2) واعد/مبشر

(3) أثرى

(4) مزيج من

(5) تفاعلي

(6) نماذج

(7) مركز حفظ

(8) تراث

Notes on Reading

Definitions	التعريفات		
artifact	قطعة أثرية	a piece of art or tool ⁽¹⁾ made by humans long ago	(1) أداة
civilization	حضارة	people's way of life, culture, and achievements	(2) عرض
exhibition	معرض/عرض	a public display ⁽²⁾ of objects or artworks	(3) علامة
symbol	رمز/شعار/إشارة	a picture or sign ⁽³⁾ that shows something	
magnificent	بديع/مبهر	extremely beautiful	

1 one of + superlative

واحد من + صيغة التفضيل

- The Grand Egyptian Museum is **one of** Egypt's **most magnificent** cultural projects.

2 is located = lies

يقع جغرافيًا في

- The Grand Egyptian Museum **is located** (**lies**) near the Giza Pyramids.

3 stand as

يقف كـ

- It **stands as** a bridge between Egypt's great past and its promising future.

4 include

يشتمل على - يتضمن

للإشارة إلى أن شيئاً ما هو جزء أو عنصر من مجموعة أكبر

- The museum **includes** artifacts.

5 contain

يحتوى على

تشير إلى أن المحتوى الكلى الموجود بالداخل

- The box **contains** old books.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A/An is a historical object made by humans long ago.
 a) civilization b) symbol c) exhibition d) artifact
- 2 The Grand Egyptian Museum just a short walk from the Great Pyramid.
 a) locate b) is located c) locates d) is locating
- 3 The new museum stands a giant book of history that never closes!
 a) like b) as c) so d) such
- 4 King Tut's golden mask is one of artifacts in the whole world!
 a) cooler b) coolest c) cooler d) the coolest
- 5 The library books on the Ancient Egyptian civilization.
 a) focuses b) includes c) consists d) appears

**Talking about the Grand Egyptian Museum**

الحديث عن المتحف المصري الكبير



online



Why do you think museums are important for a country?

لماذا تعتقد أن المتاحف مهمة لأى دولة؟

Museums are important because they keep our history safe and help people learn about the past.

المتاحف مهمة لأنها تحفظ تاريخنا وتساعد الناس على التعرف على الماضى.



What can young people learn when they visit the Grand Egyptian Museum?

ماذا يمكن أن يتعلم الشباب عندما يزورون المتحف المصري الكبير؟

Young people can learn about Ancient Egypt.

يمكن للشباب أن يتعلموا عن مصر القديمة.



What do you think?

ما رأيك؟

I think it is a great idea to learn about our history and protect it.

أعتقد أنه من الجيد جداً أن نتعلم عن تاريخنا ونحافظ عليه.



In my opinion ...

فى رأيى، ...

In my opinion, every child should visit museums to learn new things.

فى رأيى، يجب أن يزور كل طفل المتاحف ليتعلم أشياء جديدة.



I agree because ...

أنا أوافق لأن ...

I agree because learning about history helps us understand our country better.

أنا أوافق لأن التعرف على التاريخ يساعدنا على فهم بلدنا بشكل أفضل.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Hazem is asking Lina about her visit to the new museum.

Hazem: Did you go to the new museum?

Lina : Yes, I (1)..... there yesterday.

Hazem: (2)..... did you go with?

Lina : I went with my family.

Hazem: Is the museum very big?

Lina : Yes, it is (3)..... and beautiful.

Hazem: (4)..... did you see inside?

Lina : I saw the big different statues and artifacts.



How to write about the Grand Egyptian Museum

كيف تكتب عن المتحف المصري الكبير

1 What is it?

ما هو؟

- It is a very big museum in Egypt.
- It shows the history of Ancient Egypt.
- Many people visit it.

2 What can we see there?

ماذا يمكن ان نرى هناك؟

- We can see King Tut's treasures.
- There are many statues and mummies.
- We can see old tools and jewelry.

3 What can students learn?

ماذا يمكن للطلاب تعلمه؟

- Students can learn about ancient kings.
- They can learn how Egyptians lived.
- They can learn why Egypt is famous.

The Grand Egyptian Museum

المتحف المصري الكبير

4 How should we behave?

كيف ينبغي ان نتصرف؟

- We should be quiet.
- We must not touch the objects.
- We should follow the rules.

5 Why Is It Important?

لماذا هو مهم؟

- It protects our history.
- It teaches young people.
- It makes us proud of Egypt.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

The Grand Egyptian Museum is a very large and beautiful museum in Egypt. Many people visit it to learn about Ancient Egypt. Inside the museum, we can see King Tut's treasures, huge statues, mummies, and old tools. Students learn how Ancient Egyptians lived and why our history is important. When we visit the museum, we should be quiet and must not touch anything. The museum helps protect our heritage and teaches young people about the past. It is a special place that makes all Egyptians proud.

LESSON 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The museum presents the ancient history and a story through every artifact it displays.
 a) locates b) tells c) appears d) celebrates
2. A/An includes the culture, beliefs, cities, and achievements of a group of people over time.
 a) symbol b) exhibition c) object d) civilization
3. The library is a public place where anyone can read books. The antonym of "public" is ".....".
 a) common b) shared c) private d) promising
4. The antonym of "combine" is ".....", which means to divide things.
 a) separate b) include c) blend d) celebrate
5. The museum millions of visitors making it a source of national pride for all Egyptians.
 a) houses b) focuses c) locates d) designs
6. The Grand Egyptian Museum will over 100,000 artifacts.
 a) welcome b) touch c) locate d) design
7. You should work hard to achieve success. To form the noun of "achieve," we add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ion b) -ment c) -al d) -ly
8. The palace was so magnificent that everyone admired it. The synonym of "magnificent" is ".....".
 a) terrible b) foreign c) single d) impressive
9. The pharaoh's crown تاج is not just gold; it is a of power.
 a) symbol b) bridge c) route d) business
10. The includes artwork, tools, and objects that show how people lived long ago.
 a) lab b) exhibition c) library d) sign

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

explore – artifact – invent – exhibition – treasures

The Grand Egyptian Museum is a very special place for history lovers. Inside the building, there is a huge (1)..... that welcomes everyone to see. You can see rare (2)..... that kings used many years ago. It is exciting to (3)..... the wide halls with your family today. Every golden (4)..... tells a story about life in the past. We learn so much about our great civilization when we visit this amazing place.

Lesson 4

The Golden Goose

الاوزة الذهبية



Characters الشخصيات



Dummling:

He's kind and often laughed.

دوملينج: طيب وعادة ما يضحك.



The wise man:

The man who blessed Dummling.

الرجل الحكيم: الذي بارك/كافأ دوملينج.



The Golden Goose:

A magical bird with shining gold feathers.

الاوزة الذهبية: طائر سحري لديه ريش ذهبي لامع.



The princess:

The king's daughter

الأميرة: بنت الملك



Dummling's brothers:

The eldest was proud and selfish and the middle was clever, but unkind.

إخوة دوملينج: الأكبر كان فخورًا وأنانيًا، والأوسط كان ذكيًا ولكن قاسٍ.



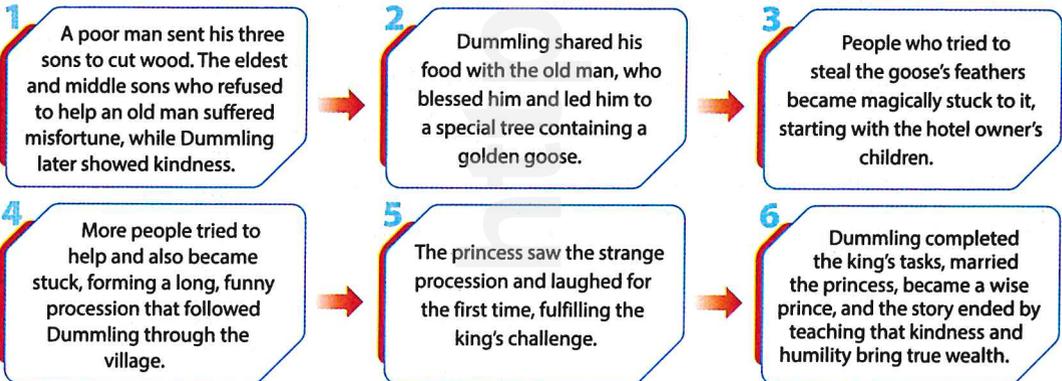
The three children:

The children of the hotel owner who tried to steal one feather from the goose.

الثلاثة أبناء: أبناء صاحب الفندق الذين حاولوا سرقة ريشة من الاوزة.

EVENTS MAP

خريطة الأحداث



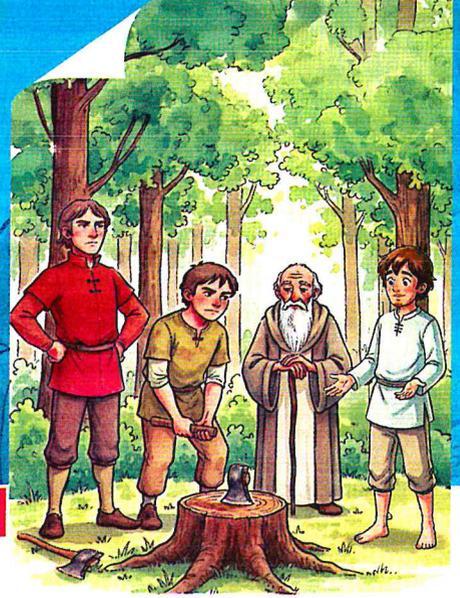
Lesson 4

1

Chapter One: The Three Brothers

Chapter (1) in points:

الفصل الأول في نقاط



- 1 A poor man had three sons.
كان لدى رجل فقير ثلاثة أبناء.
- 2 The eldest son was proud and selfish.
كان الابن الأكبر متكبراً وأنانياً.
- 3 The middle son was clever but unkind.
كان الابن الأوسط ذكياً لكنه غير لطيف.
- 4 The youngest son was kind and people called him "Dummling".
كان الابن الأصغر لطيفاً، وكان الناس يسمونه «دوملينج».
- 5 The father sent each son to cut wood in the forest.
أرسل الأب كل ابن ليقطع الخشب في الغابة.
- 6 The eldest son met an old man who asked for food and water.
قابل الابن الأكبر رجلاً عجوزاً طلب منه طعاماً وماءً.
- 7 He refused rudely, and soon hurt his hand with his axe.
رفض بوقاحة، وسرعان ما جرح يده بفأسه.
- 8 The middle son also met the old man and laughed at him.
قابل الابن الأوسط الرجل العجوز أيضاً وسخر منه.
- 9 His axe broke, and he returned home with nothing.
انكسر فأسه، وعاد إلى البيت دون شيء.
- 10 Dummling went last, and his brothers laughed at him.
ذهب دوملينج آخرًا، وسخر منه أخواه.
- 11 Dummling was simple and had a good heart.
كان دوملينج بسيطاً وكان لديه قلب طيب.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

axe (n)	فأس/بلطة	selfish (adj)	أناني/محبٌ لنفسه
forever (adv)	إلى الأبد/دائماً	slip (ped) (v)	ينزلق
injured (adj)	مصاب/مجروح	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح/يفلح

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

behavior (n)	سلوك/تصرف	moral (n/adj)	مغزى/عبرة/أخلاقى
change (d) (v)	يغير	personality (n)	شخصية
cleverness (n)	ذكاء/مهارة	proud (adj)	فخور/متكبر
describe (d) (v)	يصف	return (ed) (v)	يعود/يرجع
fail (ed) (v)	يفشل	rudely (adv)	بوقاحة
fairy tale (n)	قصة /حكاية شعبية	save (d) (v)	ينقذ/يحفظ
fate (n)	قدر/مصير	simple (adj)	بسيط
forest (n)	غابة	son (n)	ابن
goose/geese (n)	إوزة/إوز	the eldest (adj)	الأكبر سناً
hurt (adj)	مصاب	turn (n)	دور/منعطف
kindness (n)	طيبة/لطف	wounded (adj)	مجروح

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

ask for	يطلب	go home	يذهب إلى البيت
begin with	يبدأ بـ	one day	في يوم من الأيام
come close	يقترّب	slide out	ينزلق
full of	مملوء بـ	soon after	بعد وقت قصير
get injured	يصاب/يجرح	laugh at	يسخر من

Definitions التعريفات

selfish	أناني/محبٌ لنفسه	not thinking about other people's needs or feelings ⁽¹⁾	(1) مشاعر
injured	مصاب/مجروح	hurt or wounded ⁽²⁾	(2) مجروح
axe	فأس/بلطة	a tool used to cut wood	(3) ينزلق
slipped	منزلق	to slide ⁽³⁾ out of your hand	(4) بدون
succeed	ينجح/يفلح	to achieve what you were trying to do	
forever	إلى الأبد/دائماً	for all time - without ⁽⁴⁾ end	

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What qualities do you think make a person kind or unkind?
- 2 Why do you think fairy tales often begin with "Once upon a time"?

 **Read the following text. Guess the meaning of the words in bold.**

SB page 20

Chapter One: The Three Brothers

Once upon a time⁽¹⁾, there was a poor man who had three sons. The eldest was proud and **selfish**. The middle son was clever but unkind, and the youngest son was kind and often laughed. People called him "Dummling", yet he had a **good heart**⁽²⁾.

Which brother do you think is the kindest? Why?

One day, their father sent each son into the **forest**⁽³⁾ to cut wood. The eldest brother went first. As he worked, an old man **came closer to**⁽⁴⁾ him, asking for food and water. The eldest son, thinking only of himself, **rudely**⁽⁵⁾ refused. Soon after, his **axe slipped**, and he **injured** his hand. Tired and angry, he went home with little to show.

Why did the eldest brother hurt his hand?

The next day, the middle brother went to the forest. He too met the old man, who asked kindly for food and drink. The middle son **laughed at**⁽⁶⁾ him and walked away. Not long after, his axe broke, and he returned home with nothing.

What happened to the middle brother after he was unkind to the old man?

Both brothers laughed at Dummling when their father told him it was his turn, for they thought he could not **succeed**. But Dummling, though simple, had a heart full of **kindness**⁽⁷⁾ that would soon change his life **forever**⁽⁸⁾.

Why did Dummling's brothers laugh at him when it was his turn?

(1) كان ياما كان

(2) قلب طيب

(3) غابة

(4) اقترب من

(5) بوقاحة

(6) سخر من

(7) طيبة

(8) للأبد

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. How many sons did the poor man have?

كم عدد أبناء الرجل الفقير؟

- He had three sons.

2. What did the father ask his sons to do?

ماذا طلب الأب من أبنائه أن يفعلوا؟

- He asked them to go to the forest to cut wood.

3. What happened to the eldest son?

ماذا حدث للأبن الأكبر؟

- His axe slipped and injured his hand.

4. How did the middle son treat the old man?

كيف عامل الابن الأوسط الرجل العجوز؟

- He laughed at him and walked away.

5. What was the youngest son's name?

ما اسم الابن الأصغر؟

- People called him "Dummling."

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think the old man asked for food and water?

لماذا تعتقد أن الرجل العجوز طلب طعامًا وماءً؟

- To see which son was kind and helpful.

2. Which son do you think was the best? Why?

من تعتقد أنه الابن الأفضل؟ ولماذا؟

- Dummling, because he had a kind heart.

3. Do you think the two older brothers failed? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الأخوين الكبارين فشلوا؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, they failed. Because they were unkind and selfish.

4. What lesson does this story teach us?

ما الدرس الذي تُعلّمنا إياه هذه القصة؟

- It teaches us to be kind to everyone.

5. Do you think being kind is more important than being clever? Why?

هل تعتقد أن اللطف أهم من الذكاء؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, because kindness helps others and brings good luck.

Chapter 1 Exercises

SB page 21

1 Read and match the words from column (A) with their meanings from column (B):

A
1. selfish
2. slipped
3. axe
4. injured
5. succeed
6. forever

B
a) to achieve what you were trying to do
b) hurt or wounded
c) for all time - without end
d) not thinking about other people's needs or feelings
e) to slide out of your hand
f) a tool used to cut wood

2 Answer the following questions:

1. How would you describe the eldest brother?
2. Why did the eldest brother get injured while cutting wood?
3. What can you tell about Dummling's personality from the last sentences?
4. What does the underlined pronoun 'He' refer to, according to the text "He too met the old man, who asked kindly for food and drink?"
5. Why did the middle son's cleverness fail to save him from the same fate as his eldest brother?

3 Read and put True (T) or False (F):

1. The eldest brother was kind to the old man. (.....)
2. The middle brother's axe broke after he was rude. (.....)
3. Dummling was the youngest son. (.....)
4. The old man offered the brothers food and water. (.....)
5. Dummling's brothers believed he would succeed. (.....)

4 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

1. Why do you think both of the older brothers faced bad luck after refusing to help the old man?
2. What lesson or moral do you think this story teaches about kindness and behavior?

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The eldest son was very and thought only of himself.
 - kind
 - clever
 - selfish
 - simple
- People called the youngest son “Dummling” because they thought he was
 - proud
 - clever
 - kind
 - simple
- The father sent his sons to the to cut wood.
 - village
 - forest
 - market
 - river
- The asked the eldest son for food and water.
 - father
 - old man
 - king
 - hunter
- The middle son was, but unkind.
 - proud
 - clever
 - kind
 - simple

2 Write True (T) or False (F):

- The eldest son gave food and water to the old man. (.....)
- The middle son’s axe broke because he was unkind. (.....)
- Dummling was laughed at because he was proud. (.....)
- Both older brothers returned home with no wood. (.....)
- Dummling had a kind heart, even though he seemed simple. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- How did the eldest son hurt his hand?
.....
- How did the middle son treat the old man?
.....
- What did the brothers think about Dummling before he went to the forest?
.....
- Why is kindness important in this story?
.....
- If you met the old man in the forest, what would you do?
.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The museum uses so visitors can experience history in an interactive way.
a) glass fronts b) digital guides c) square meters d) libraries
- Her painting is unique; you won't find another like it. The synonym of "unique" is ".....".
a) common b) normal c) terrible d) special
- A/An is a piece of art or tool made by humans long ago.
a) civilization b) exhibition c) artifact d) symbol
- Traveling helps us learn about different cultures around the world. To change the noun "culture" into an adjective, we delete "e" and add the suffix ".....".
a) -al b) -ive c) -ment d) -ion

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The Grand Egyptian Museum is a wonderful place in Giza. It is near the Pyramids. Many people call it "GEM". It is a very large building. Inside, you can see many old things from history. There are statues of kings and queens. The best part is King Tut's treasure. You can see his gold mask there. The museum has nice gardens outside too. Families like to visit on weekends. It is a fun place to learn about Egypt. More than just a museum, the Grand Egyptian Museum is a symbol of national pride. It celebrates Egypt's unique heritage while welcoming the world to experience the wonder of its civilization in the heart of Giza. I want to go there with my school friends soon. It will be a very happy day for everyone.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the text is
a) a trip to the beach
b) the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization
c) the Grand Egyptian Museum
d) the Pharaohs' Golden Parade
- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the
a) garden b) museum c) school d) weekend

B) Answer the following questions:

- Where is the Grand Egyptian Museum located?
- Who does the writer want to go to the museum with?
- Do you think people like visiting museums? Why?

The Story

3 A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. The old man was angry and shouted at the brothers. (.....)
2. Dummling's brothers believed he would succeed. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What happened to each brother in the forest?
.....
4. Why do you think the old man appeared to the brothers?
.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It is forbidden for cars to stop in the middle of the road. (mustn't)
.....
2. It is necessary for Jana to arrive at school on time. (must)
.....
3. It's not necessary for you to wear a uniform on the weekend. (don't have to)
.....
4. It is a good idea for Hazem to practice playing football. (should)
.....

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It is not allowed to feed the animals at the zoo. (We ...)
.....
2. It is necessary for my dad to work on his computer. (has to)
.....
3. It is advisable for you to be polite to your friends. (should)
.....
4. Inside the gas station, it is necessary to turn off your phone. (mustn't)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

architect (n)	مهندس معمارى	historian (n)	مؤرخ
breathtaking (adj)	مبهر/رائع	masterpiece (n)	تحفة فنية/عمل فنى رائع
highlight (ed) (v)	يبرز/يسلط الضوء على	wisdom (n)	حكمة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

alive (adj)	حى/على قيد الحياة	opening (n)	افتتاح/بداية
Avenue of Sphinxes (n)	طريق الكباش	respectful (adj)	محترم (للغير)
block (ed) (v)	يمنع/يحجب	serve (d) (v)	يخدم/يقدم
book (ed) (v)	يحجز	shopping area (n)	منطقة تسوق
classmate (n)	زميل دراسة	support (ed) (v)	يدعم/بؤيد/يساند
corridor (n)	ممر داخلى	volunteer (ed) (v)	يتطوع
disturb (ed) (v)	يزعج	local community (n)	المجتمع المحلى
elderly (adj)	مسن/كبير فى السن	historical walkway (n)	ممشى تاريخى
Faculty of Tourism (n)	كلية السياحة		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

act with	يتصرف مع	perform plays	يمثل مسرحيات
feel welcome	يشعر بالترحيب	show pride	يظهر الفخر
fill ... with	يملأ... بـ	take photos	يلتقط صوراً
in need	بحاجة إلى/ فى حاجة إلى	wait in long lines	ينتظر فى طوابير طويلة
on time	فى الوقت المحدد	work on	يعمل على

Read and complete with a word from the list:

architect – artist – block – wait

Checkpoint

- 1 My uncle is an He designs buildings.
- 2 We sometimes in long lines at the supermarket.
- 3 Please, don't the path when people are walking.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
brehtaking	رائع	amazing	مذهل	ordinary	عادي
ancestors	أسلاف/أجداد	forefathers	أجداد	descendants	أحفاد
alive	حي	living	حي	dead	ميت
inside	بالداخل	in/within	داخل	outside	خارج
support	يدعم/يؤيد/يساند	assist	يساعد	contrast	يعارض

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
history (n)	تاريخ	-ian	تحول إلى اسم فاعل	historian (n)	مؤرخ	
art (n)	فن	-ist	تحول إلى اسم فاعل	artist (n)	فنان	
wise (adj)	حكيم	-dom	تحول إلى اسم	wisdom (n)	حكمة	
respect (v/n)	يحترم/احترام	-ful	تحول إلى صفة	respectful (adj)	محترم (للغير)	

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The view from the Pyramids was breathtaking. The synonym of "breathtaking" is ".....".
 a) ordinary b) boring c) amazing d) weak
- Hend shows support by listening to her friends. The word "support" means ".....".
 a) contrast b) assist c) alive d) amaze
- She loves reading books about ancient history. To form the noun for someone who studies the past, delete "y" and add the suffix "....." to the word "history".
 a) -ist b) -ian c) -ic d) -cal

Reading Text

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Have you heard of the Grand Egyptian Museum?
- 2 Why do you think it's important to Egypt?

 Read the following dialog between Bassem and Leen. Guess the meaning of the expressions in bold.

SB page 22

Leen Hi Bassem! You look **excited**⁽¹⁾ today. What happened?

Bassem Hi Leen! I watched the opening of the Grand Egyptian Museum on TV yesterday.

Leen Really? How was it?

Bassem It was **breathtaking**. The whole event looked like a **masterpiece**⁽²⁾.

Leen Wow! What made it so special?

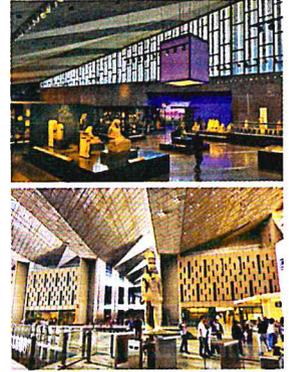
Bassem People from all over the world **witnessed**⁽³⁾ the opening live on TV.

Leen Did Egypt send a message to the world through this event?

Bassem **Of course!** Egypt showed the world how great the Pharaohs were and how rich our history is.

Leen I heard many teams worked on the event. Is that true?

Bassem Yes. Police, **architects**⁽⁴⁾, artists, and **historians**⁽⁵⁾ worked together. It was a day of national pride.



(1) متحمس

(2) تحفة فنية/عمل فني رائع

(3) شهد

(4) مهندسون معماريون

(5) مؤرخون

Post-reading questions:

1 How was the opening of the Grand Egyptian Museum?

.....

2 Who worked on the event?

.....

3 Do you feel proud of the opening of the Grand Egyptian Museum? Why?

.....

Pre-reading questions:

1 Have you ever written a blog?

2 What was it about?

 Read the following Advice Blog: Visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum.

SB page 24

Visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum is a breathtaking experience⁽¹⁾ that fills every Egyptian with pride⁽²⁾. When you go, you must follow the rules⁽³⁾ to help preserve our heritage. You must respect the royal mummies⁽⁴⁾ and other monuments. You mustn't touch anything, and you should speak quietly. You have to book your ticket, but you don't have to bring a guide because information is everywhere. You shouldn't block⁽⁵⁾ the halls, which are often lined with visitors. A good visit shows the wisdom of our ancestors and keeps their history alive.



(1) خبرة

(2) فخر

(3) قواعد صارمة

(4) مومياءات الملكية

(5) تسد/تعرقل

(6) يزعم

(7) ممر/رواق

My School Advice Blog

School is a place where we learn, grow, and work together. To make our school a better place for everyone, you **should** always be respectful to your teachers and classmates. You **must** arrive on time because being late **disturbs**⁽⁶⁾ the class. Students must keep the school clean and put rubbish in the bins. You **mustn't** shout in the **corridors**⁽⁷⁾, as this makes the school too noisy. Everyone **has to** bring their books and materials every day. Finally, you **should** help new students and make them feel welcome. Following these simple rules helps create a safe and friendly school for all.



Post-reading questions:

1 What must you do when you visit the Grand Egyptian Museum?

.....

2 Mention ذكر three of the instructions students should follow at school.

.....

LESSONS 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A person who creates beautiful paintings is called a/an ".....".
 a) architect b) artist c) historian d) carpenter
2. It rained, so Mona stayed inside. The word "....." is the opposite of "inside".
 a) outside b) indoor c) over d) above
3. The was crowded during break time; students were chatting loudly with each other.
 a) theater b) cinema c) corridor d) library
4. We should always the elderly by listening to them and helping them daily.
 a) support b) contrast c) report d) forget
5. My grandparents are part of my family; they are my
 a) descendants b) neighbors c) ancestors d) classmates
6. We should always show respect to our teachers. To turn the word "respect" into an adjective, we add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ist b) -ian c) -ness d) -ful
7. You should be when speaking with your teachers.
 a) noisy b) polite c) ugly d) alive
8. You can book your ticket online to avoid in long lines.
 a) waiting b) listening c) giving d) following
9. Many people in community clean-ups to help keep the streets clean.
 a) serve b) hear c) feel d) volunteer
10. Friends and family often support us in difficult times. The antonym of "support" is ".....".
 a) contrast b) assist c) serve d) fight

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ancestors – highlight – polite – historian – wisdom

Yesterday, our class visited the big museum in the city center. We met a famous (1)..... who told us great stories about the past. He wanted to (2)..... how smart and strong people were long ago. We learned many facts about our (3)..... and how they built amazing cities. The old man spoke with great (4)..... to all the students. Everyone listened very carefully and learned a lot from him.

B**SKILLS****Speaking**

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Planning a visit to the Grand Egyptian Museum

التخطيط لزيارة المتحف المصري الكبير



Can you tell me about this artifact?

هل يمكنك أن تخبرني عن هذه القطعة الأثرية؟

This artifact is an old statue from Ancient Egypt.

هذه القطعة الأثرية عبارة عن تمثال قديم من مصر القديمة.



Why is it important?

لماذا هي مهمة؟

It is important because it shows how people lived long ago.

إنها مهمة؛ لأنها تظهر كيف كان الناس يعيشون منذ زمن بعيد.



When was it built?

متى صنعت؟

It was built more than 3,000 years ago.

صنعت منذ أكثر من ٣٠٠٠ سنة.



When did the museum open?

متى افتتح المتحف؟

The museum opened ten years ago.

افتتح المتحف منذ عشر سنوات.



What can we do inside the museum?

ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل داخل المتحف؟

We can look at artifacts and learn about history.

يمكننا مشاهدة القطع الأثرية وتعلم التاريخ.



How should visitors behave inside?

كيف يجب أن يتصرف الزوار بالداخل؟

Visitors should be quiet and follow the rules.

يجب على الزوار أن يكونوا هادئين وأن يتبعوا القواعد.



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ Ahmed wants to visit the museum.

Ahmed : Do you want to go to the museum?

Rana : Yes, I (1)..... . I would love to visit it today.

Ahmed : (2)..... will we go to the big museum?

Rana : We can take the bus with dad.

Ahmed : (3)..... will we see inside the big rooms?

Rana : We will see the golden mask of King Tut.

Ahmed : Is the museum near the Giza Pyramids?

Rana : Yes, it (4)..... very close to the Pyramids.



How to write an advice blog كيفية كتابة مدونة نصائح

What is an advice blog post?

An advice blog is a short online text where a writer gives helpful tips, rules, or suggestions to readers. People write advice blogs to tell others how to behave, how to act in places, or how to do things in a safe and respectful way. Writers often use modals like must, mustn't, should, shouldn't, have to, and don't have to give clear advice.

Your blog must include:

- A clear title
- A short introduction
- Correct punctuation and spelling
- Advice using modals
- 80-100 words

1 Health Advice: نصائح صحية:

- Eat healthy food.
 - We should eat fruit and vegetables every day.
- Drink water.
 - You must drink enough water to stay healthy.
- Sleep well.
 - We should sleep early at night.

2 School Advice: نصائح مدرسية:

- Do homework.
 - Students must do their homework on time.
- Study a little every day.
 - You should study every day to learn better.
- Ask for help.
 - Students can ask the teacher for help.

Advice blog for students

مدونة نصائح للطلاب

3 Life Advice: نصائح مدرسية:

- Be kind.
 - We should be kind to others.
- Help family.
 - Children should help their family at home.
- Don't waste time.
 - We must not waste time on bad habits.

اقرأ هذا النموذج العجيب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

"Advice blog for students"

This is an advice blog to help students live better. First, we should eat healthy food and drink water every day. We must sleep early to feel strong. At school, students must do their homework and study a little each day. They should also ask the teacher for help when they don't understand something. In life, we should be kind to others and help our families at home. We must not waste time on bad habits. These simple tips can make our day better.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/An is a person who designs buildings using creative plans.
a) artist b) historian c) builder d) architect
2. The old man is very wise and gives good advice. To form the noun from "wise", delete "e" and add the suffix ".....".
a) -ist b) -dom c) -ian d) -ful
3. Students must care historical sites and never disturb tourists there.
a) with b) on c) for d) at
4. He felt alive after finishing his morning run. The opposite of "alive" is ".....".
a) strict b) dead c) ordinary d) respectful

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rubbish – support – ticket – volunteer – elderly

My friends and I love to help people in our town. Every week, we (1) some time to clean the streets. We pick up all the (2) from the park and put it in bins. We also visit (3) people who need help with their shopping. It is important to (4) our neighbors and make them smile daily. Doing good things makes us feel very happy and proud.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Doctors have a role to help the sick people. (have to)
.....
2. You are not allowed to talk loudly in the quiet library. (mustn't)
.....
3. It is not necessary for Basma to bring her umbrella. (Basma ...)
.....
4. On sunny days, it is a good idea to wear hats. (should)
.....

4 Complete the following dialog:

Laila is asking Omar about the new museum.

Laila : When does the new museum open?

Omar : It (1)..... at nine o'clock.

Laila : Did you buy the tickets?

Omar : Yes, my mom (2)..... our tickets online.

Laila : Is the building very big or small?

Omar : It is (3)..... and has many stone statues.

Laila : (4)..... we see the big statue of Ramses?

Omar : Yes, we'll see it in the main hall.

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"Advice blog about a visit to the museum"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It is forbidden to throw plastic bottles into the clean river. (mustn't)

.....

2. It is necessary for Khaled to fix his broken toy. (has to)

.....

3. It is advisable for students to ask questions in the class. (should)

.....

4. It is necessary for you to brush your teeth before bed. (must)

.....

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
permit	يسمح	public	عام
restoration	تجديد	awful	فظيع
support	يساند	restore	يرمم

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الأسئلة الأساسية في القطعة إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية (أي ما يدور حوله النص)، ويكون السؤال كالتالي:

- What's the main idea of the passage?
- What is the passage about?

How to find the main idea easily, you should follow these steps:

1. If there is a title, pay attention to it.
 2. Read the first sentence.
 3. Read the last sentence.
 4. Look for repeated words or phrases.
- لتجد الفكرة الرئيسية بسهولة، عليك اتباع الخطوات التالية:
 إذا كان هناك عنوان فانتهبه له.
 اقرأ الجملة الأولى.
 اقرأ الجملة الأخيرة.
 ابحث عن الكلمات والعبارات المكررة.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Many teenagers today spend hours on social media. While it helps them stay connected, it can also lead to anxiety and sleep problems. Experts suggest setting daily limits to stay healthy.

- What is the main idea of the passage?
 - a) Social media is fun.
 - b) Teenagers love technology.
 - c) Social media has both benefits and risks.
 - d) Experts dislike social media.

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- You must care for the royal mummies and other monuments.

- يجب أن تحترم المعلم والمشرفين الآخرين .
- يجب أن نعتني بالموميوات الملكية والآثار الأخرى.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- شاهد الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم الحدث مباشرة على شاشة التلفزيون.

- People around the world watched the event live on TV.
- People around the world read about the event in a newspaper.

Modal verbs for necessity & advice

(must/mustn't, have to/don't have to, should/shouldn't)

1. must:

Subject + **must** + inf. **مصدر الفعل**

e.g. You **must** follow the teacher's instructions.

Drivers **must** stop at a red light.

2. have/has to:

Subject + **have/has to** + inf. **مصدر الفعل**

e.g. We **have to** wear our school uniform every day.

Laila **has to** take her medicine 3 times a day.

3. mustn't:

Subject + **mustn't** + inf. **مصدر الفعل**

e.g. You **mustn't** run in the corridors.

4. **don't/doesn't** have to:

e.g. You **don't** have to **bring** your laptop.

You can if you want to.

Sara **doesn't** have to **go** to school today. It's a holiday.

5. should/shouldn't:

e.g. You **should** do your homework before playing.

You **shouldn't** eat too much junk food.

costumes

أزياء

ceremonies

طقوس/مراسم

heritage

تراث

royal mummies

موميאות ملكية

parade

موكب/استعراض

preserve (d)

يُحافظ على

archaeologist

عالم آثار

lined

مصطف

buried

مدفون

restore (d)

يرمم/يعيد/يسترجع

grand

فخم/عظيم/ضخم

artifact

قطعة أثرية

exhibition

معرض

civilization

حضارة

magnificent

رائع/مذهل

symbol

رسم

ancestors

أسلاف/أجداد

architect

مهندس معماري

masterpiece

تحفة فنية/عمل فني رائع

highlight (ed)

يبرز/يسلط الضوء على

wisdom

حكمة

Skills

A. Speaking

Planning a visit to the Grand Egyptian Museum

1. Can you tell me about this artifact?

- This artifact is an old statue from Ancient Egypt.

2. When was it built?

- It was built more than 3,000 years ago.

3. What can we do inside the museum?

- We can look at artifacts and learn about history.

4. How should visitors behave inside?

- Visitors should be quiet and follow the rules.

B. Writing

The Grand Egyptian Museum

The Grand Egyptian Museum is a very large and beautiful museum in Egypt. Many people visit it to learn about Ancient Egypt. Inside the museum, we can see King Tut's treasures, big statues, mummies, and old tools. Students learn how Ancient Egyptians lived and why our history is important. When we visit the museum, we should be quiet and must not touch anything. The museum helps protect our heritage and teaches young people about the past. It is a special place that makes all Egyptians proud.

A Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The word "heritage" means
a) the future b) ancient history c) modern life d) technology
- A museum is a place where artifacts are
a) worked b) played c) displayed d) performed
- The Avenue of Sphinxes is a walkway.
a) trade b) historical c) scary d) modern
- "Preserve" means ".....".
a) destroy b) lose c) forget d) protect
- The word "civilization" refers to a community with
a) games and sports b) culture and history
c) stones and rules d) language and fashion

B Language

2 Complete using modal verbs (must, have to, should, don't have to, mustn't):

- We respect ancient monuments.
- You take photos in "No Photo" zones.
- You sleep well. It's my advice for you.
- You clean the room. I cleaned it myself.
- At my job, we wear a uniform.

C Writing

3 Write an advice blog of (80-100) words to give useful tips when visiting museums.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

- The parade happened in the streets of Luxor. (.....)
- The special cars kept the mummies safe. (.....)

B) Listen again and complete:

- The parade had bright and music.
- The mummies were inside special
- The whole watched the event.

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The museum has many ancient artifacts from Egypt. The word "ancient" is opposite to ".....".
a) powerful b) traditional c) modern d) necessary
- To keep our history alive, we must traditions from one generation to the next.
a) serve b) stop c) damage d) pass
- The price of the new phone is very high. When we add the suffix "....." to "price", we create the adjective.
a) -ful b) -less c) -ous d) -al
- During the parade, people stood eagerly بتلهف to the royal mummies.
a) take part b) bring back c) witness d) move

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

masterpiece – noisy – architect – breathtaking – photos

My uncle has a very special job. He is a famous (1) who designs big, beautiful houses. Last year, he built a true (2) near the blue river. The view from the top floor is simply (3) for everyone. Many people come to take (4) of the tall walls. He loves his work because he can make the city look nice.

D

Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It isn't necessary to water the plants when it rains. (don't have to)
.....
2. It is necessary for everyone to respect the elderly. (must)
.....
3. It is not allowed to ride your bike on the grass. (mustn't)
.....
4. It is a good idea for Mariam to learn a new sport. (should)
.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Zina and Tarek are planning a visit to the museum.

Zina : Let's plan a trip to the museum.

Tarek : That is a great (1)..... for the weekend.

Zina : (2)..... is coming with us on the trip?

Tarek : Our friends and our teacher will come.

Zina : What (3)..... I wear for the visit?

Tarek : You should wear comfortable shoes for walking a lot.

Zina : Are there mummies in the museum?

Tarek : (4)....., the mummies are in another place.

8 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"A visit to the new museum"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 8

FAMILY VALUES AND ROLES



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify main ideas and supporting details in short informational texts.
- Skim and scan for specific information.

Listening

- Listen for gist and details in short recordings about house chores.
- Identify specific information such as time, steps, or reasons.

Speaking

- Participate in short discussions and role-plays.
- Describe how things work using sequence words.
- Express opinions and give short reasons.

Language

- Use possessive pronouns and possessive adjectives correctly.

Writing

- Write short paragraphs describing people or processes.
- Use linking words to show sequence and logic.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

babysit (v)	يجالس/يرعى الأطفال	role (n)	دور
caring (adj)	مهتم/معتن/حنون	take care of (v)	يعتني بـ/يرعى
fix (ed) (v)	يُصلح	twins (n)	توعم

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

apartment (n)	شقة	parent (n)	أحد الوالدين
broken (adj)	مكسور	patient (n)	مريض
delicious (adj)	لذيذ/شهي	repair shop (n)	محل إصلاح/ورشة
educational (adj)	تعليمي	safely (adv)	بأمان/بسلام
Egypt's past (n)	ماضي/تاريخ مصر	schoolwork (n)	واجبات مدرسية
Egyptian dishes (n)	أطباق/مأكولات مصرية	secondary (adj)	ثانوي
history teacher (n)	معلم/مدرس تاريخ	situation (n)	موقف
housework job (n)	عمل منزلي	sports fan (n)	مشجع رياضة
movie lover (n)	محبًا للأفلام	value (n)	قيمة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

help with	يساعد على	kind to	لطيف مع
concerned about	قلق بشأن/مهتم بـ	look after	يعتني بـ/يرعى
discuss solutions	يناقش الحلول	on weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع
do a job	يقوم بعمل/بمهمة	prepare for	يستعد لـ
drive ... to	يوصل ... بالسيارة إلى	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
keep ... tidy	يحافظ على ... مرتب	spend money on	ينفق المال على

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – at – patient – twins

- 1 The look so alike that people often mix them up.
- 2 I helped my friend prepare his presentation last month.
- 3 A nurse helped the walk down the hall.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

condition (n)	شرط/وضع	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
discussion (n)	مناقشة	solution (n)	حل
fair (adj)	عادل/منصف	turn (n)	دور (فى أداء عمل)

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

accept (ed) (v)	يقبل	insist (ed) (v)	يصر على
agree (d) (v)	يوافق	invite (d) (v)	يدعو
decide (d) (v)	يقرر	promise (d) (v)	يوعد
elder (adj)	أكبر سنًا/أكبر	teddy bear (n)	دب حبيب/دمية دب

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

argue about	يتجادل بخصوص	do the dishes	يغسل الأطباق
argue with	يتجادل مع	in front	فى الأمام
(be) right	على حق	in the middle	فى الوسط/المنتصف
belong to	يخص/ينتمى إلى	on the left	على اليسار
do a task	يؤدي مهمة	take out	يخرج شيئاً

Read and complete with a word from the list:

do - make - with - invite

- 1 My elder brother helps me my homework.
- 2 We the tasks together to finish them faster.
- 3 I want to my friend to my birthday party.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
babysit	يجالس أطفال	babysat	babysat
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven
feed	يُطعم	fed	fed
teach	يُدرس/يُعلم	taught	taught

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
agree	يوافق	accept	يقبل	refuse	يرفض
caring	مهتم/حنون	concerned/worried	مهتم	uncaring/unconcerned	غير مهتم
delicious	لذيذ/شهي	tasty	لذيذ	tasteless	بلا طعم
fix	يُصلح	repair/mend	يُصلح	break	يكسر
helpful	مفيد/مساعد	useful	مفيد	useless	غير مفيد

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
education (n)	تعليم	-al	تحول إلى صفة	تحول إلى صفة	educational (adj)	تعليمي
help (v)	يساعد	-ful	تحول إلى صفة	تحول إلى صفة	helpful (adj)	مفيد/مساعد
teach (v)	يُعلم/يُدرس	-er	تحول إلى اسم	تحول إلى اسم	teacher (n)	معلم/مدرس
responsible (adj)	مستؤول	-ity	تحول إلى اسم	تحول إلى اسم	responsibility (n)	مسؤولية
safe (adj)	آمن	-ly	تحول إلى حال	تحول إلى حال	safely (adv)	بأمان/بسلام

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Can you help me with my homework? To make "help" into an adjective, we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -al c) -er d) -ful
- The soup was so delicious. The synonym of "delicious" is ".....".
a) weak b) tasty c) hard d) broke
- Maher agreed to help his friend. The antonym of the word "agree" is ".....".
a) concern b) repair c) accept d) refuse
- She wants to teach children how to read and write. The word "teach" becomes a noun when we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -al c) -ful d) -er

Reading Text

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What jobs or roles do people usually have in a family?
 - 2 Do you help at home? What housework job do you do?
-  Read the following text. What does Mona do when her parents go out?

SB page 28

The Hassan family lives in an **apartment**⁽¹⁾ in Cairo. There are five people in their family: Mom, Dad, and three children. Everyone has important **roles**⁽²⁾ in their home.

Mom works as a doctor at a hospital. She **takes care of**⁽³⁾ patients every day. At home, she prepares delicious Egyptian dishes for her family and helps her children with their schoolwork. She is very caring and always listens to everyone's problems.

Dad is a history teacher at a **secondary school**⁽⁴⁾. He loves teaching about **Egypt's past**⁽⁵⁾. At home, he fixes things when they break and drives the children to school safely every morning.

Mona is sixteen years old. She is the eldest child, so she helps to take care of her younger brothers. She **babysits**⁽⁶⁾ them when her parents go out and helps them prepare for bed.

The two boys, Ahmed and Omar, are **twins**⁽⁷⁾. They are twelve years old. Their job is to keep their room tidy and feed their cat. They also help Dad wash the family car on weekends.

Every person in the Hassan family has a **special**⁽⁸⁾ role, and this makes their home a happy place.



- | | |
|---------------|-------------------|
| (1) شقة | (2) أدوار |
| (3) يعتني بـ | (4) مدرسة ثانوية |
| (5) تاريخ مصر | (6) تجالس الأطفال |
| (7) توعم | (8) خاص |

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Where does the Hassan family live?

.....

- 2 What is Mom's job?

.....

- 3 What does Dad do at home?

.....

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 Do you think everyone in a family must have a role? Why? Why not?
- 2 How should you argue with your elder brother/sister?

Listen to this family conversation. Two brothers are discussing roles: **SB page 30**

Ramy and Sameh were **arguing about**⁽¹⁾ their house **roles**⁽²⁾. Ramy said it was Sameh's turn to wash the dishes, but Sameh **insisted**⁽³⁾ that Ramy only fed his cat and didn't do anything else. Ramy replied that he also **took out**⁽⁴⁾ the **rubbish**⁽⁵⁾, so the dishes should be Sameh's job, not his. They couldn't agree, so they wanted their mom to decide who was right. After a short **discussion**⁽⁶⁾, a **fair solution**⁽⁷⁾ was found: the **responsibility**⁽⁸⁾ of washing the dishes would be Ramy's tomorrow. He **accepted**⁽⁹⁾ it without any **conditions**⁽¹⁰⁾, and Sameh promised to help with his brother's roles next time.



- | | |
|------------------|-------------|
| (1) يتجادل بخصوص | (2) أدوار |
| (3) أصر على | (4) أخرج |
| (5) القمامة | (6) مناقشة |
| (7) حل عادل | (8) مسؤولية |
| (9) وافق | (10) شروط |

Post-listening question:

SB

Write True (T) or False (F).

- 1 Ramy says it is Sameh's turn to wash the dishes. (.....)
- 2 Sameh says Ramy only fed the cat. (.....)
- 3 They want their mom to decide who is right. (.....)
- 4 Ramy agrees to do the dishes tomorrow without conditions. (.....)

تطبيق الأضواء

محتواك الرقمي مجاناً مع الكتاب:
امسح الكود الشخصي بالغلاف الداخلي في
نهاية الكتاب، واحصل على محتوى المادة
الرقمي من تطبيق الأضواء.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

babysit يجالس/يرعى الأطفال	to look after children for a short time when parents are away
caring مهتم/معتن/حنون	kind and helpful to others
fix يُصلح	to repair or make something work again
roles أدوار/مهام	the jobs or parts people have in a family, group, or play مسرحية
take care of يعتنى ب/يرعى	look after someone or something
twins توعم	two babies born to the same mother at the same time

1 everyone

كل واحد (يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد ويحل محلها ضمير جمع)

- Everyone has important roles in their home.

2 "be" + away

يكون خارج المنزل

- I look after my baby sister when my parents **are away**.

3 work as a/an + وظيفة

يعمل كـ

- Mom **works as a doctor** at a hospital. • My dad **works as an engineer**.

4 help + inf./to + inf.

يساعد على

- Mona **helps (take/to take)** care of her younger brothers.

5 is to + inf.

هو أن

- Their job **is to keep** their room tidy and feed their cat.

6 The + (اسم الشخص) = family name اسم العائلة

- The **Hassan** family lives in an apartment in Cairo.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My uncle works an engineer.
 a) as b) such as c) such d) like
- 2 Amira's task is the cat every morning.
 a) feed b) feeds c) to feeding d) to feed
- 3 Everyone important roles at home.
 a) have b) has c) is d) are
- 4 I'll be back soon. I'm only for an hour.
 a) ways b) way c) a way d) away

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sister our little sister when our parents are busy.
a) agrees **b) fixes** **c) babysits** **d) sits**
2. Wear a helmet to stay safe while riding a bike. To change "safe" into an adverb, add the suffix "".
a) -er **b) -tion** **c) -ly** **d) -ily**
3. After the storm, the window was, so Dad called someone to repair it.
a) repaired **b) broken** **c) lost** **d) found**
4. Grandmother is very because she always asks how we feel and cooks delicious food.
a) tasty **b) unhelpful** **c) caring** **d) nasty**
5. We must our rooms tidy and organized every day.
a) solve **b) prepare** **c) keep** **d) miss**
6. We usually go to our village weekends.
a) on **b) for** **c) in** **d) with**
7. As, he takes care of his younger brothers and sisters.
a) the eldest **b) the youngest** **c) the smallest** **d) the newest**
8. In our family, we always teach children the of kindness.
a) role **b) value** **c) rule** **d) task**
9. Parents are concerned about their children's safety online. To make the opposite of "concerned," we can add the prefix "".
a) dis- **b) in-** **c) en-** **d) un-**
10. When my bike was broken, my neighbor came to it quickly.
a) mix **b) fix** **c) prepare** **d) discuss**

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

caring – looking – delicious – tasks – tidy

I live in a nice apartment with my big family. My mom works hard at a hospital, so we help her. I do difficult (1) every day. I must keep my bedroom clean and (2) after school. My sister is very (3) and kind to everyone. We also help with cooking (4) dinner on weekends. We really love helping our parents in our home.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The old house was in a bad It needs restoration **ترميم**.
- a) task b) weight c) condition d) name
2. Teamwork can lead to the best for difficult tasks.
- a) solution b) problem c) danger d) rule
3. Taking care of the environment is everyone's
- a) responsibility b) problem c) promise d) mistake
4. My brother always helps me with my homework after school every day.
- a) a younger b) weaker c) elder d) smaller
5. She will what to do after she listens to everyone's point of view.
- a) refuse b) agree c) decide d) argue
6. Please, the dishes after dinner because Mom is very busy.
- a) make b) do c) invite d) cook
7. This book belongs to my friend who lives in Giza near the Pyramids.
- a) with b) off c) to d) by
8. We agree with the teacher's plan. The antonym of "agree" is ".....".
- a) refuse b) listen c) accept d) help
9. When it's your, please read the next paragraph aloud to the class.
- a) condition b) order c) rule d) turn
10. He decided to his best friend to his birthday party last weekend.
- a) argue b) invite c) help d) belong

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

turn – repair – help – dishes – decide

My family likes to work together in the house every day. Today, we need to clean the kitchen after our big dinner. My mom asks me to (1)..... with the cleaning now. We (2)..... who will wash the dishes and cups. My brother will do the (3)..... in the big sink **حوض**. Then, it is my (4)..... to dry the dishes. We are happy when the house is clean and very tidy.

Possessive Adjectives & Possessive Pronouns

صفات وضمائر الملكية

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

Omar is drawing a picture. (**His/Her**) pencils are new, and he likes using blue color. His sister, Jana, is sitting beside him. (**Her/Hers**) drawing shows a big garden. Omar looks at Jana and says, "Can I use (**your/yours**) green pencil?" Jana smiles and says, "Yes, but the purple one is (**my/mine**)."

When they finish, both children hold up their pictures. "These drawings are (**our/ours**) best ones yet!" Omar says happily.

Usage الاستخدام

Possessive adjectives and pronouns show who something belongs to.

تشير صفات وضمائر الملكية إلى من ينتمي إليه شيء ما.

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

✓ I

my + noun

- This is **my** pen.

noun ... **mine**

- This pen is **mine**.

✓ He

his + noun

- This is **his** jacket.

noun ... **his**

- It is Ali's jacket. It's **his**.

✓ She

her + noun

- This is **her** dress.

noun ... **hers**

This dress is **hers**.

✓ It

its + noun

- I have a car. **Its** color is red.

✓ We

our + noun

- This is **our** house.

noun ... **ours**

- This house is **ours**.

✓ You

your + noun

- This is **your** book.

noun ... **yours**

- Anas, take this **book**. It's **yours**.

✓ They

their + noun

- This is **their** bike.

noun ... **theirs**

- This **bike** is **theirs**.

Possessive Adjectives:

صفات الملكية:

(my/our/your/his/her/its/their)

- They must have a noun after them.

- تأتي قبل الاسم. لا بد أن يأتي اسم بعدها.

Possessive Pronouns:

ضمائر الملكية:

(mine/ours/yours/his/hers/theirs)

They replace the noun. No noun comes after them.

- تحل محل الاسم، ولا يأتي بعدها أي اسم.

- Ali's house is very far, but **mine** is near.
- My book is red, but **yours** is yellow.



Got it?

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The cake on the white plate belongs to me. (mine)

- يتم وضع (mine) بدون اسم بعدها مع حذف ما يفيد الملكية (belongs to).

- The cake on the white plate is mine.

- 2 Soha wears a nice scarf. (her)

- يتم وضع (her) قبل الاسم الذي تملكه سها؛ لأن صفات الملكية تأتي قبل الشيء المملوك.

- Soha wears her nice scarf.

- 3 I bought a new bag. The new bag is blue. (My)

- (My) جاءت بحرف كبير؛ لذلك يجب أن نبدأ بها الجملة، ولأنها تعود على ملكية الشئ، فتوضع قبل الشيء المملوك.

- I bought a new bag. My new bag is blue.

- 4 They have a large house. (theirs)

- الفعل (have) يدل على الملكية، فلذلك يتم حذفه واستبداله بضمير الملكية الذي يأتي بعد الاسم المملوك.

- The large house is theirs.

تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Adam lost red pen at the big school yesterday.
 a) he b) him c) his d) himself
2. The small red car outside the house is
 a) she b) her c) herself d) hers
3. In the morning, I always brush teeth before breakfast.
 a) my b) mine c) me d) I
4. My cat cleans body every day.
 a) it b) its c) it's d) itself
5. Rania and sister are playing in the green park.
 a) she b) hers c) herself d) her

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- ▶ 1. This pencil belongs to Sara. (hers) SB

2. The blue jacket is Ahmed's. (his) SB

3. These shoes belong to us. (our) SB

4. That house belongs to them. (theirs) SB

5. This laptop is mine. (my) SB

6. This is my smart computer. (mine)

7. They own **يملك** this big blue car. (theirs)

8. Amira has a new digital camera. (hers)

9. My sister Amina has a pretty dress. The dress is pink. (Her)

10. These red apples are for us. (our)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This nice blue bag on the chair is
a) my b) me c) I d) mine
2. Yesterday, the students finished homework in the classroom.
a) their b) them c) they d) theirs
3. Can you please help me find lost yellow shoe?
a) my b) mine c) me d) I
4. Omar is looking for glasses on the wooden table.
a) he b) his c) him d) himself
5. The big house on the corner of the street is
a) our b) us c) we d) ours

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. This is her notebook. (hers)
.....
2. These pencils belong to the children. (theirs)
.....
3. This pen belongs to me. (my)
.....
4. Dina is my friend. The red umbrella belongs to her. (hers)
.....
5. Arwa found a book that belongs to you. (your)
.....
6. My mother owns a new dress. (hers)
.....
7. This video game is for my brother and me. (ours)
.....
8. This bike in the park is ours. (Our bike)
.....
9. I have a new skirt. (mine)
.....
10. Asmaa owns a green pencil. (hers)
.....

حلل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Talking about tasks that can be done at home

الحديث عن المهام التي يمكن القيام بها في المنزل



online



What tasks do you usually do at home?

ما المهام التي تؤديها عادةً في المنزل؟

I usually take out the rubbish and set the table for meals.

أنا عادةً أخرج القمامة، وأجهز المائدة للوجبات.



Which task do you like the most? Why?

ما المهمة التي تفضلها أكثر؟ ولماذا؟

I like setting the table the most because it's quick.

أفضل مهمة هي تجهيز المائدة؛ لأنها سريعة.



Who helps you with the housework?

من يساعدك في أعمال المنزل؟

My elder sister sometimes helps me with the housework.

أختي الكبرى أحياناً تساعدني في أعمال المنزل.



How often do you do these tasks?

كم مرة تؤدي هذه المهام؟

I do them almost every day.

أؤديها تقريباً كل يوم.



Do you think children should help at home? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الأطفال يجب أن يساعدوا في المنزل؟ لماذا؟

Yes! I think children should help because it shows love for the family.

نعم! أعتقد أن الأطفال يجب أن يساعدوا؛ لأن ذلك يظهر حبهم للعائلة.



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ Adam is talking to Jana about what she can do at home.

Adam : What do you do at home?

Jana : I (1)..... my mom clean the rooms.

Adam : That is very good of you.

Jana : Do you (2)..... any tasks at home?

Adam : Yes, I wash the dishes after lunch.

Jana : (3)..... task do you like best?

Adam : I like (4)..... my small cat best.

Jana : That sounds like a fun job.



How to write about tasks done at home

كيفية الكتابة عن المهام التي يتم إنجازها في المنزل

1 Your father: والدك

- My father feeds the pets.
- He fixes things in the house.
- He takes out the rubbish.

2 Your mother: والدتك

- My mother cleans the kitchen.
- She washes the clothes.
- She tidies the living room.

3 Your brother: أخوك

- My brother cleans the floor.
- He washes the dishes.
- He waters the plants.

Tasks done at home

المهام التي تُنجز في المنزل

4 Your sister: أختك

- My sister makes her bed.
- She arranges her books.
- She helps prepare the food.

5 You: أنت

- I clean my room.
- I help set the table.
- I keep my things in the right place.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

“Tasks you do at home”

In my family, everyone helps with the tasks at home. My father feeds the pets and takes out the rubbish. My mother cleans the kitchen and washes the clothes. My brother cleans the floor and washes the dishes. My sister makes her bed and helps prepare the food. I also do my part. I clean my room, keep my things in the right place, and help set the table. When each person does a small job, our home becomes clean and comfortable. Working together makes our family stronger and happier.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. Ahmed helps his mom at home on Mondays. (.....)
2. Laila washes the dishes after lunch. (.....)

B) Listen again and complete:

3. Ahmed cleans his messy in the morning.
4. He waters the green in the garden.
5. Their mom is very because they help.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My elder brother always shows that he is because he is kind and helpful to others.
a) broken b) caring c) local d) secondary
2. Her comments were helpful and improved my work. The word "helpful" has the same meaning as ".....".
a) useful b) delicious c) harmful d) educational
3. Schools provide education that helps students succeed in life. To form an adjective from the word "education", add the suffix ".....".
a) -er b) -al c) -ful d) -ly
4. Every Saturday, I the rubbish before breakfast.
a) look after b) take out c) go out d) drive to

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

fix – prepare – broken – role – repair

My uncle is a very clever man who helps many people. He works in a small (1) shop near our big school. People bring him old or (2) devices to look at. He knows how to (3) them very quickly and safely. He plays an important (4) in our town because he is helpful to neighbors. Everyone likes him because he is friendly and does a good job.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. That little cat is my pet, not yours. (mine)
.....
2. Adam bought a new bag for the school books. (his)
.....
3. This nice house belongs to our family. (ours)
.....
4. Noha bought a new shirt. (Noha's)
.....

5 Complete the following dialog:

Tamer's brother helps him clean their room.

Sara : Who helps you with housework, Tamer?

Tamer: My (1)..... helps me clean our room.

Sara : That is nice. What do you (2).....?

Tamer: We put our toys in the box.

Sara : How (3)..... do you do that?

Tamer: We do it every day.

Sara : You are a very helpful boy.

Tamer: (4)..... you, I like to help.

6 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"How you help at home"

.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. That bag belongs to us. (our)
.....
2. She got a purple scarf. (Her)
.....
3. The ball is Karim's. (his)
.....
4. We bought a new house. The house is big and high. (Our)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆☆ < 50% Study again 50 : 64% Practice more 65 : 84% Take more exams 85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

backyard (n)	فناء خلفي/حديقة خلفية	memories (n)	ذكريات
customs (n)	عادات	surprise party (n)	حفلة مفاجأة
exchange (d) (v)	يُبادل	traditions (n)	تقاليد

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

bakery (n)	مخبز	pie (n)	فطيرة
balloon (n)	بالون	receive (d) (v)	يستقبل/يتلقى
celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل بـ	secretly (adv)	سراً/خفياً
colorful (adj)	ملون	couch (n)	أريكة/كثبة
different (adj)	مختلف	space (n)	مساحة/فراغ
famous (adj)	مشهور	special (adj)	خاص/مميز
gift (n)	هدية	special moments (n)	لحظات مميزة
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	surprise (d) (v/n)	يفاجئ/مفاجأة
homemade (adj)	منزلي الصنع	together (adv)	معاً
hope (d) (v)	يأمل	younger days (n)	أيام الطفولة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

come home	يأتي إلى البيت	in return	في المقابل
create memories	يخلق ذكريات	jump out	يقفز للخارج
do well	يؤدي جيداً	laugh at	يسخر من
during Christmas time	أثناء وقت عيد الميلاد	on a birthday	في عيد ميلاد
hear about	يسمع عن	put up	يرفع/يعلق

Read and complete with a word from the list:

create – in – out – customs

- 1 My family likes to memories by taking photos together.
- 2 Sharing brings people closer together.
- 3 The rabbit suddenly jumped from behind the tree.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
have يملك	had	had
hide يختبئ/يختفي	hid	hidden
put يضع	put	put
tell يخبر	told	told

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
close	قريب	near	قريب	far	بعيد
famous	مشهور	well-known	معروف	unknown	غير معروف
different	مختلف	dissimilar	مختلف	similar	مشابه
fun	مرح/متعة	joy/joyful	مرح	horrible	فظيع
huge	ضخم	large	ضخم	small/tiny	صغير/ضئيل
organize	ينظم/يرتب	arrange	يرتب	disorganize	يُفسد
special	خاص/مميز	unique	فريد/مميز	common	شائع

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
color (n)	لون	-ful	تحويل إلى صفة	colorful (adj)	ملون
differ (v)	يختلف	-ent		different (adj)	مختلف
secret (adj/n)	سري/سر	-ly	تحويل إلى حال	secretly (adv)	سراً/خفياً

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Yesterday, she her friend an amazing secret story full of joy and fun.
a) put b) hid c) told d) have
- Prices for the same bag can differ from store to store. To change the verb "differ" into an adjective, we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -ion c) -y d) -ent
- The room had a secret door behind the bookshelf. We add the suffix "....." to get the adverb of "secret".
a) -ful b) -ent c) -ment d) -ly

Reading Text

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- What kind of traditions does your family have?

 Read the following email. What do they do during Christmas time? **SB Page 32**

To : ali-magdy@ ... com
From : popgarci@ com
Subject : Special Moments with the Garcia Family

Hi Ali,

I hope you're doing well! I want to tell you a bit about my family and some of the special **traditions**⁽¹⁾ we have.

Every family has its own stories and **customs**⁽²⁾, and ours are no different. The Garcia family from San Antonio, Texas, loves spending time together and creating beautiful **memories**⁽³⁾. Our favorite tradition happens every Sunday when the whole family gathers at Grandma's house for a big lunch. Grandma cooks her famous chicken and rice, and everyone brings something **special**⁽⁴⁾. Uncle Carlos brings fresh bread from his **bakery**⁽⁵⁾, and Aunt Maria makes her delicious apple pie. After eating, the children always play games in the **backyard**⁽⁶⁾ -it's so much fun!

We also love **celebrating**⁽⁷⁾ birthdays. Whenever someone has a birthday, we organize a **surprise**⁽⁸⁾ party with colorful balloons and a homemade cake. Just last month, we all celebrated Dad's fortieth birthday. Everyone hid behind the couch, and when Dad came home from work, we all jumped out and shouted, "Surprise!" He was so happy.

Christmas⁽⁹⁾ is our biggest celebration of the year. We put up a huge Christmas tree, exchange **handmade gifts**⁽¹⁰⁾, and laugh at Grandpa's funny stories about his younger days. These traditions make our family very close and happy. I'd love to hear about your family's traditions too!

Best wishes, Pop Garcia



- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) تقاليد | (2) عادات |
| (3) ذكريات | (4) خاص |
| (5) مخبز | (6) حديقة خلفية |
| (7) الاحتفال بـ | (8) مفاجأة |
| (9) عيد الكريسماس | (10) هدايا مصنوعة يدويًا |

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What happens every Sunday at Grandma's house?
- 2 How did the Garcia family surprise Dad on his fortieth birthday?
- 3 Why do you think these traditions help the Garcia family feel "very close and happy"?

Notes on Reading

Definitions التعريفات

backyard	فناء خلفي	the space or garden behind a house	
customs	عادات	things people usually do in their culture or country	(1) في المقابل
exchange	يبادل/يتبادل	to give something and receive something in return ⁽¹⁾	(2) مخطط لها
memories	ذكريات	things you remember from the past	(3) ينتقل من جيل لآخر
surprise party	حفلة مفاجئة	a special celebration planned ⁽²⁾ secretly for someone	
traditions	تقاليد	ways of doing things that are passed from one generation to another ⁽³⁾ .	

1 so + adj. + that

جداً لدرجة أن

- He was **so** happy **that** he even started crying.

2 would ('d) love + to + inf.

يحب أن

- I'd **love** to **hear** about your family's traditions too.

3 customs

العادات / الممارسات الاجتماعية التي تعبر عن ثقافة المجتمع

- Eating together on Fridays is a **custom** in some families.

4 traditions

تقاليد قديمة تنتقل عبر الأجيال

- Wearing special clothes on celebrations is a **tradition**.

5 habits

عادات شخصية، مثل عادة شخص معين

- Anas has a **habit** of reading a story before bed.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The word "....." means things you remember from the past.
 a) backyards b) parties c) families d) customs
- I'd love your stories. Tell me more.
 a) hear b) hearing c) to hearing d) to hear
- Manal was happy that she laughed a lot.
 a) so b) to c) little d) not
- A/An is a practice or belief that is regularly repeated and passed down over time.
 a) tradition b) fact c) energy d) file



How to write about traditions does your family have

كيفية الكتابة عن التقاليد التي تمتلكها عائلتك



اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

“Traditions my family have”

My family has many traditions. We celebrate birthdays and holidays like New Year and Eid. On these days, we cook traditional meals and eat together. On weekends, we play games and watch movies as a family. We always help each other at home and visit our relatives and friends. On special days, we exchange gifts and take family photos. These traditions make our family happy and bring us closer. I love my family and enjoy all our special traditions.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. are things you remember from your younger days and special moments in life.
a) Traditions **b) Customs** **c) Memories** **d) Backyards**
2. They live in a huge house near the river. The word "huge" means the same as ".....".
a) small **b) close** **c) famous** **d) large**
3. The artist added bright colors to the painting. We add the suffix "....." to "color" to form its adjective.
a) -ent **b) -ly** **c) -ful** **d) -er**
4. She helped the school trip for all students.
a) organize **b) delay** **c) hide** **d) break**
5. Last weekend, we my sister's birthday with a colorful surprise party.
a) appeared **b) received** **c) celebrated** **d) happened**
6. My grandmother baked a pie with fresh apples and gave it to me as a gift.
a) funny **b) homemade** **c) weak** **d) close**
7. Every family has its own, like eating special food during holidays or festivals.
a) customs **b) secrets** **c) spaces** **d) gifts**
8. I a beautiful gift from my friend, and I was so happy.
a) told **b) sent** **c) put** **d) received**
9. They old books at school so everyone can read something new.
a) try **b) exchange** **c) hope** **d) plan**
10. We sat on the in the garden and talked about fun memories.
a) bakery **b) rice** **c) couch** **d) bread**

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

surprise – surprised – colorful – celebrate – backyard

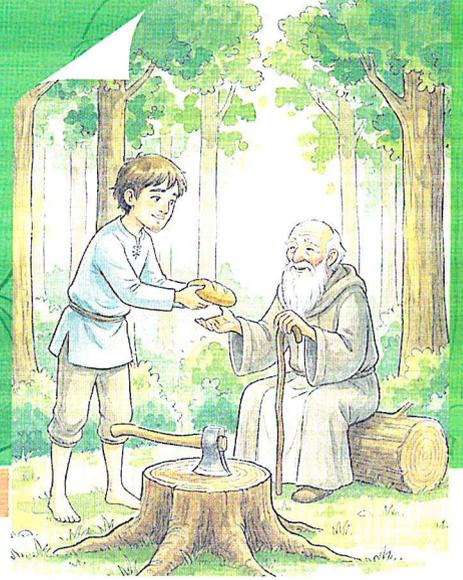
My sister does not know that today is going to be very fun. We want to (1)..... with all our friends and family at our big house. Mom made a delicious cake and Dad put up (2)..... balloons on the walls. We planned a huge (3)..... party for her because she loves fun games and nice gifts. Everyone is waiting quietly in the (4)..... to shout "Happy Birthday" when she walks through the door.

2

Chapter Two:
Dummling's Kindness

Chapter (2) in points:

الفصل الثاني في نقاط



- 1 Dummling went into the forest with bread and water.
ذهب دوملينج الى الغابة ومعه خبز وماء.
- 2 He met the old man and kindly shared his food and drink.
قابل الرجل العجوز وشاركه طعامه وشرابه بلطف.
- 3 The old man smiled and blessed him for his kindness.
ابتسم الرجل العجوز وشكره بسبب لطفه.
- 4 He told Dummling to cut down a special tree.
أخبره أن يقطع شجرة خاصة.
- 5 Inside the tree, Dummling found a goose with golden feathers.
وجد داخل الشجرة اوزة ريشها من الذهب الالامع.
- 6 Dummling gently picked up the golden goose and took it home.
أخذ دوملينج الاوزة الذهبية بلطف وعاد بها الى بيته.
- 7 That night, he stayed at a small hotel near a busy market.
في تلك الليلة، بات في فندق صغير قرب سوق مزدحم.
- 8 The house was owned by a man and his three children who were amazed by the goose.
كان المنزل مملوكا لرجل وأطفاله الثلاثة الذين دهشوا من جمال الاوزة.
- 9 They became greedy and wanted to steal a golden feather.
أصبحوا طماعين وحاولوا سرقة ريشة ذهبية.
- 10 But the goose had magical power that would soon surprise everyone.
لكن الاوزة كانت تمتلك قوة سحرية ستفاجئ الجميع قريبا.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adventure (n)	مغامرة	ordinary (adj)	عادي
bless (ed) (v)	يبارك/ينعم على	own (ed) (v)	يمتلك
greed (n)	طمع	reveal (ed) (v)	يكشف/يظهر
hotel (n)	فندق	shining (adj)	لامع/متلألئ

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

amazed (adj)	مدهش/مذهول	guide (d) (v)	يرشد
beauty (n)	جمال	kindness (n)	لطف/طيبة
busy market (n)	سوق مزدحم	magical power (n)	قوة سحرية
feather (n)	ريشة	pure (adj)	نقى/صافٍ
fill (ed) (v)	يملأ	reward (ed) (v)	يُكافئ
gently (adv)	برفق/بلطف	surprising (adj)	مفاجئ
gladly (adv)	بسرور/بفرح	unlike (adj)	على عكس
golden (adj)	ذهبي	wonder (ed) (v)	يتعجب/يتساءل

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

along the way	على طول الطريق	cut down	يقطع
surprised by	مدهش من/مذهول من	pick up	يلتقط/يجمع
by his side	بجانبه	reward for	مكافأة لـ

Definitions التعريفات

adventures	مغامرات	exciting experiences where something suddenly ⁽¹⁾ happens	بشكل مفاجئ ⁽¹⁾
blessed	يبارك/ينعم على	having received good wishes or kindness	ينبعث منه ⁽²⁾
greed	طمع	want to have more of something than is needed	
ordinary	عادي	not interesting/usual	
reveal	يكشف/يفصح	make something known that was hidden before	
shining	متلألئ/لامع	giving off ⁽²⁾ bright light or glowing	

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 How would you describe the eldest brother?
- 2 Do you believe good things happen to people who are kind? Why or why not?

 Read the following text. Guess the meanings of the words in bold. *SB page 34*

Chapter Two: Dummling's Kindness

At last, it was Dummling's turn to go into the forest. Unlike his brothers, he **gladly**⁽¹⁾ shared his bread and drink with the old man he met along the way. The old man smiled and **blessed** him, saying, "Because of your **kindness**⁽²⁾, you will be rewarded".

(1) بسعادة

(2) طيبة/عطف

(3) يقطعها

(4) اوزة

(5) ريش

(6) متسائلاً

(7) مندهشاً

(8) سحري

Why did the old man bless Dummling?

.....

He guided Dummling to a special tree and told him to **cut it down**⁽³⁾. When Dummling did, he found a **goose**⁽⁴⁾ inside with **feathers**⁽⁵⁾ made of pure **shining** gold.

Amazed by this, Dummling gently picked up the golden goose **wondering**⁽⁶⁾ what **adventures** it might bring.

What did Dummling find inside the tree?

.....

That night, He stayed at a small hotel at a busy market, which was owned by a man and his three children, while keeping the goose by his side. They were **surprised**⁽⁷⁾ by the bird's beauty.

Who saw the golden goose at the hotel?

.....

Greed filled their hearts as they thought of taking a golden feather for themselves. But the goose was not ordinary—it had a strange, **magical**⁽⁸⁾ power that would soon **reveal** itself in surprising ways.

What did the man and his children want to do with the golden goose?

.....

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. What did Dummling give to the old man? ماذا أعطى دوملينج للرجل العجوز؟

- He gave him bread and water.

2. What did the old man say to Dummling? ماذا قال الرجل العجوز لدوملينج؟

- He said, "Because of your kindness, you will be rewarded."

3. What did Dummling find inside the tree? ماذا وجد دوملينج داخل الشجرة؟

- He found a goose with golden feathers.

4. Where did Dummling stay that night? أين بات دوملينج فى تلك الليلة؟

- He stayed at a small hotel near a busy market.

5. Who saw the golden goose at the hotel? من رأى الإوزة الذهبية فى الفندق؟

- A man and his three children saw it.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think the old man helped Dummling but not his brothers? لماذا تعتقد أن الرجل العجوز ساعد دوملينج ولم يساعد إخوته؟

- Because Dummling was kind, while his brothers were selfish.

2. What does the golden goose teach us about greed? ماذا تعلمنا الإوزة الذهبية عن الجشع؟

- It shows that greedy people may get into trouble.

3. How is Dummling different from the man and his children? كيف يختلف دوملينج عن الرجل وأبنائه؟

- He is generous, but they are greedy.

4. Do you think Dummling expected a reward? Why or why not? هل تعتقد أن دوملينج توقع مكافأة؟ ولماذا؟ ولماذا لا؟

- No, because he shared his food just to help, not to get something back.

5. What might happen if someone tries to steal a feather from the golden goose? ماذا قد يحدث إذا حاول أحد سرقة ريشة من الإوزة الذهبية؟

- Something magical and surprising might happen.



1 Read and match the words from column (A) with their meanings from column (B):

A

- 1. blessed
- 2. shining
- 3. adventures
- 4. reveal
- 5. greed
- 6. ordinary

B

- a) make something known that was hidden before
- b) exciting experiences where something unexpectedly suddenly happens
- c) reflecting bright light or glowing
- d) having received good wishes or kindness
- e) want to have more of something than is needed
- f) not interesting/usual

2 Answer the following questions:

1. What does the word "rewarded" mean in the story?

.....

2. What did Dummling do first—share his food or cut down the tree?

.....

3. What does Dummling's behavior show about his personality?

.....

4. Why did the old man help Dummling but not his brothers?

.....

5. What happened when Dummling was kind to the old man?

.....

3 Read and put True (T) or False (F):

- 1. Dummling refused to share his food with the old man. (.....)
- 2. The old man showed Dummling a special house. (.....)
- 3. Dummling found a golden goose inside the tree. (.....)
- 4. The hotel owner and his three children were kind and generous. (.....)
- 5. The golden goose had magical powers. (.....)

4 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

1. Why do you think the man rewarded Dummling?

.....

2. Do you agree with the behavior of the hotel owner? Why or why not?

.....

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Dummling shared his bread and water with the he met in the forest.
 a) wolf b) old man c) king d) hunter
2. The old man Dummling because he was kind.
 a) spoke about b) blessed c) punished d) forgot
3. Inside the tree, Dummling found a with golden feathers.
 a) chicken b) duck c) goose d) bird
4. That night, Dummling stayed at a house near a busy
 a) river b) school c) market d) palace
5. The man and his children felt when they saw the golden goose.
 a) sad b) kind c) greedy d) brave

2 Write True (T) or False (F):

- ▶ 1. Dummling refused to give food to the old man. (.....)
2. The old man told Dummling to cut down a special tree. (.....)
3. The golden goose was an ordinary bird with no magic. (.....)
4. The shopkeepers wanted to steal a golden feather. (.....)
5. Dummling's kindness led to a magical reward. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- ▶ 1. Why did the old man bless Dummling?

2. What did Dummling find inside the tree?

3. Where did Dummling stay after leaving the forest?

4. How do you think the hotel owner felt when they saw the golden goose?

5. Do you think the golden goose will help Dummling or cause trouble? Why?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A is the space or garden located behind a house where people relax.
 a) lab b) backyard c) bakery d) library
2. Colds are common during the winter season. The opposite of "common" is ".....".
 a) funny b) close c) huge d) special
3. Who is responsible for cleaning the classroom today? To change "responsible" into a noun, we add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ment b) -tion c) -ity d) -ive
4. My uncle will a surprise party for Grandma at her house.
 a) receive b) happen c) think d) organize

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

My family has a special tradition every Friday night. We call it our "Story Time." My grandmother, Grandma Karima, sits in her big red chair. We all sit on the rug near her. She tells us old stories about our family. Last week, she told us about my father when he was little. He climbed a very tall tree and could not get down. We laughed a lot at that story. After the story, my mother, Huda, makes a hot drink for everyone. We drink it and talk about the funny story. I love Friday nights because we are all together. It is the best time of the week for me.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is
 a) climbing a tree b) a family tradition
 c) drinking hot milk d) a big red chair
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
 a) rug b) story c) hot drink d) tree

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Who tells the stories to the family on Friday nights?

4. Why did the family laugh at the story about the father?

5. Do you think family traditions are important? Why?

The Story

3 A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. The golden goose had feathers made of pure gold. (.....)
2. The man and his children were kind and wanted to protect the goose. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What gift did the old man give Dummling after he shared his food?
.....
4. What would you do if you found a golden goose?
.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. That blue pen is my pen. (mine)
.....
2. The colorful kite is Rami's. (his)
.....
3. My cousins live here. The house is colorful and comfortable. (Their)
.....
4. This warm coat on the chair belongs to you. (Your)
.....

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"A surprise birthday party"

.....
.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Their shoes are outside. (theirs)
.....
2. This old photo album on the shelf is ours. (Our)
.....
3. This coat belongs to my brother. (his)
.....
4. The cookies belong to the children. (theirs)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

assist (ed) (v)	يساعد	mystery book (n)	كتاب غموض
chores (n)	أعمال منزلية	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

cup (n)	كأس/فنجان	living room (n)	غرفة معيشة
fair (adj)	عادل/منصف	loyal (adj)	وفى/مخلص
friendship (n)	صداقة	lucky (adj)	محظوظ
hardworking (adj)	مجتهد	perfect (adj)	مثالي/كامل
height (n)	ارتفاع/طول	wonderful (adj)	رائع

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

cheer up	يشجع	on special days	في أيام مميزة
dust the shelves	يزيل الغبار عن الرفوف	prepare food	يجهز الطعام
go camping	يذهب للتخييم	set the table	يجهز المنضدة
hang the lights	يعلق الأضواء	trust ... with my secrets	يثق ب... في أسراري
make the bed	يرتب السرير	water the plants	يسقى النباتات

Read and complete with a word from the list:

go – lucky – teamwork – to – with

- 1 We were because the rain stopped before our game.
- 2 My family wants to camping to enjoy nature.
- 3 I only trust my parents my secrets when I feel worried.
- 4 I'm sure helps everyone share ideas and work better.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple		Past participle	
set	يعد	set		set	
sit	يجلس	sat		sat	
hang	يعلق	hung		hung	

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
fair	عادل/منصف	equal	معتدل/متساوٍ	unfair	غير عادل
lucky	محظوظ	fortunate	محظوظ	unlucky/unfortunate	غير محظوظ
perfect	مثالي/كامل	excellent	ممتاز	imperfect	غير كامل
wonderful	رائع	astounding	مذهل	ordinary	عادي

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
luck (n)		-y	تحول إلى صفة	lucky (adj)	محظوظ
wonder (v)	يتعجب	-ful		wonderful (adj)	رائع

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The boy had good luck today. Add the suffix "....." to "luck" to form the adjective.
 a) -ly b) -y c) -ful d) -ity
- 2 The judge has made a fair decision. The word "....." has the same meaning as fair.
 a) unfair b) equal c) wonderful d) lucky
- 3 She gave a wonderful performance on stage. The word "wonderful" can't be replaced with ".....".
 a) amazing b) exciting c) fantastic d) ordinary

Reading Text

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What is your favorite role you do at home?
 - 2 What's your family's favorite tradition?
-  Read the following conversation. Guess the meaning of the expressions in bold.

SB Page 36

Mom Good morning, everyone! It's Friday—our family cleaning day. Let's plan our **chores**⁽¹⁾.

Adel Sure, Mom. I'll clean my room and **make my bed**⁽²⁾.

Salwa I'll water the plants and **dust the shelves**⁽³⁾ in the living room.

Adel **What about** the dishes, Mom? Are they mine or Salwa's today?

Salwa They're yours, Adel. Yesterday they were mine. It's only fair!

Mom **Good teamwork!** After that, I'll cook lunch, and you can both help me **set the table**⁽⁴⁾.

Salwa I'll bring my favorite dishes. They match our cups!

Mom **Great!** When we finish, we can all sit **together**⁽⁵⁾ and talk about our weekend plans.

Adel **That's a good idea!** Family time is always the best.

Salwa Yes, Mom always says, "Helping at home shows love."

Mom **Exactly!** This home is ours, so let's keep it clean and happy!



- (1) أعمال منزلية (2) يرتب السرير
(3) يزيل الغبار عن الرفوف (4) يعد/يجهز المائدة
(5) معاً

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What was Adel's primary responsibility for the morning's cleaning tasks?
.....
- 2 What activity did Mom suggest the family do together?
.....

LESSONS

5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Before arranging the books, you should the shelves.
 - a) dust
 - b) throw
 - c) close
 - d) lock
2. Every December, they the lights on the house for Christmas.
 - a) hang
 - b) sweep
 - c) cook
 - d) paint
3. Before dinner, Ali always helps his mom the table with plates.
 - a) set
 - b) sit
 - c) water
 - d) make
4. My best friend is very because he always supports me and never reveals **يكشف** my secrets.
 - a) hardworking
 - b) loyal
 - c) lucky
 - d) fair
5. After school, I camping with my family to enjoy nature.
 - a) do
 - b) go
 - c) cheer
 - d) make
6. Sara is so that she finishes all her chores before playing.
 - a) hard
 - b) equal
 - c) lucky
 - d) hardworking
7. Let's watch a movie to after the long week.
 - a) cheer up
 - b) give up
 - c) slow down
 - d) break down
8. She is very and always finishes her tasks on time.
 - a) hardworking
 - b) lazy
 - c) careless
 - d) polite
9. We had a wonderful time on our school trip. The word "wonderful" has the same meaning as ".....".
 - a) ordinary
 - b) fair
 - c) lucky
 - d) astonishing
10. My brother is very fair when he solves problems. The antonym of "fair" is ".....".
 - a) fairly
 - b) fairness
 - c) unfair
 - d) unfairly

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

trust – chores – camping – lights – food

On special days, our family loves to celebrate together. We hang the (1) and set the table after we prepare food. I help by dusting the shelves, making the bed, and watering the plants. Sometimes, we go (2) to enjoy nature. Doing these (3) together makes everyone happy. I also (4) my family with my secrets, which makes our family even closer.



How to write about your best friend

كيفية الكتابة عن صديقك المفضل

1 Basic Information: المعلومات الأساسية

- **Name:** My best friend's name is Omar.
- **Age:** He is twelve years old.
- **How I know him:** I met him at school.

2 Physical Appearance: المظهر الجسدي

- **Height/Build:** He is short and slim. نحيف.
- **Hair/Eyes:** He has black hair and brown eyes.

3 Personality: الشخصية

- **Kind/Friendly/Helpful:** He is very kind and always helps me.
- **Funny/Smart/Shy:** He is funny and smart, but a little shy sometimes.
- **Hard-working/Honest:** He studies hard and is very honest.

Your best friend صديقك المفضل

4 Interests: الاهتمامات

- **Sports/Music/Reading/Gaming:** He likes football, reading stories, and playing video games.

5 Conclusion: الخاتمة

- **Why he is special:** I like him because he makes my days happy and I trust him.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

“My best friend”

My best friend's name is Sara Hassan, and she's been my closest friend for three years. She's fifteen, the same age as me, and lives near my house. Sara has long brown hair and bright eyes. She's kind and always cheers me up. She's also loyal and friendly, so I can trust her with my secrets. Sara has two brothers and a sister, and her parents are teachers. We both love mystery books and tennis, and sometimes our families go camping together. Sara is always there for me, and I feel lucky to have her friendship.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- means people work together to finish a project or solve a hard problem successfully.
a) Friendship b) Teamwork c) Height d) Fair play
- She reminded her little brother to the bed after waking up.
a) make b) break c) paint d) hide
- She tried to cheer up her brother when he felt sad.
a) cheer b) slow c) give d) break
- Every morning, I the plants and dust the shelves.
a) drink b) water c) hang d) cheer

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

loyal – perfect – camping – teamwork – preparing

Last summer, my friends and I decided to go on a fun trip. We wanted to go (1)..... near the beautiful lake in the forest. We really loved the clean air and the green trees everywhere. My best friend is very (2)..... and always helps me with the big tent. We made a fire for (3)..... food. It was a (4)..... holiday for everyone in our group.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- The phone on the table belongs to my father. (his)
.....
- Hana is my friend. She has that red dress. (Her)
.....
- The room upstairs belongs to my brothers. (theirs)
.....
- That is not their house. (theirs)
.....

4 Complete the following dialog:

Hoda wants Tarek to help at home.

Hoda : Who will wash the dishes after dinner?

Tarek : I'll do the (1)..... .

Hoda : (2)..... will you wash them?

Tarek : I'll wash them after lunch.

Hoda : Perfect, Tarek. Who will (3)..... dinner?

Tarek : All of us will prepare food together.

Hoda : Good teamwork makes the job fast.

Tarek : I think we are a (4)..... team.

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your best friend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. These are our sunglasses. (ours)

.....

2. Sama looked for the toy she bought. (her)

.....

3. We bought a smart car. (Our)

.....

4. Her bag is on the chair. (hers)

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆☆ < 50% Study again 50 : 64% Practice more 65 : 84% Take more exams 85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
delicious	لذيذ	worried	قلق
privately	بشكل خاص	unique	فريد
fun	مرح	famous	مشهور

2 Comprehension strategies:

Extract Information

How to extract information from the text:

كيفية استخراج معلومات من النص:

Explanation:

- Some questions ask you to find facts or details directly from the passage.

بعض الأسئلة تطلب منك البحث عن تفاصيل أو معلومات محددة مذكورة نصًا فى القطعة.

Steps:

1. Read the question and underline keywords. اقرأ السؤال وضع خطأ تحت الكلمات الأساسية.
2. Scan the passage for those words or similar ones. ابحث بسرعة فى القطعة عن تلك الكلمات أو مرادفها.
3. Read around that part to find the exact detail. اقرأ حولها لتجد المعلومة الدقيقة.

How to extract information:

كيفية استخراج المعلومات:

FOR EXAMPLE:

My mom works as a doctor at a hospital. She takes care of patients every day. At home, she prepares delicious Egyptian dishes for her family and helps her children with their schoolwork. She is very caring and always listens to everyone's problems.

According to the text, what does my mom do at home?

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- We bring fresh bread from the bakery.

- نحن نحضر خبزاً طازجاً من المخبز.
- نحن نخبز خبزاً طازجاً فى المنزل.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- سأقوم بتنظيف غرفتى وترتيب سريري.

- I will clean my room and make my bed.
- I will make my room and clean my bed.

Vocabulary

twins	توأم
role	دور
babysit	يجالس/يرعى الأطفال
take care of	يرعتني/يرعى
caring	مهتم/معتن
fix (ed)	يصلح
value	قيمة
agree (d)	يوافق
invite (d)	يدعو
condition	حالة/ رطب/وضع
teddy bear	ديدوب/ دمية دب
decide (d)	يقرر
backyard	حديقة خلفية/مناخلفي
memories	ذكريات
customs	عادات
surprise party	حفلة مفاجئة
exchange (d)	يبادل
traditions	تقاليد
adventure	مغامرة
reveal (ed)	يكشف/يظهر/يوضح عن
bless (ed)	يبارك/ينعم على
shining	لامع/ مشرق

Language

Possessive Adjectives الملكية

my + noun	This is my pen.
his + noun	This is his jacket.
her + noun	This is her dress.
its + noun	I have a car. Its color is red.
our + noun	This is our house.
your + noun	This is your book.
their + noun	This is their bike.

Possessive Pronouns الملكية ضمائر

noun ... mine	This pen is mine .
noun ... his	It is Ali's jacket. It's his .
noun ... hers	This dress is hers .
noun ... ours	This house is ours .
noun ... yours	Anas, take this book . It's yours .
noun ... theirs	This bike is theirs .

Skills

A. Speaking

Talking about tasks that can be done at home

- What tasks do you usually do at home?
I usually take out the rubbish and set the table for meals.
- Which task do you like the most? Why?
I like setting the table the most because it's quick.
- Who helps you with the housework?
My elder sister sometimes helps me with the housework.
- How often do you do these tasks?
I do them almost every day.
- Do you think children should help at home?
Yes! I think children should help because it shows love for the family.

B. Writing

Tasks you do at home

At home, I help my family by doing many small jobs. Every morning, I make my bed and clean my room. I help my mother wash the dishes after meals. Sometimes, I water the plants and feed our pet. On weekends, I help my father clean the house and take out the rubbish. These jobs are easy, but they teach me to be responsible and helpful. I feel proud when I help my family at home.

A Vocabulary

1 Read and complete using the words from the box:

roles – traditions – caring – babysit – memories

1. When my parents go out, I my little brother.
2. Every person in a family has special that help the home run smoothly.
3. We have happy of playing games during holidays.
4. Our family has like eating lunch together on Friday.
5. My older sister is very; she always helps me with my homework.

B Language

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This is book. She left it on the table.
a) her b) hers c) she's d) of her
2. We care for garden. It is amazing.
a) ours b) our c) us d) ourselves
3. That bag is not —it's mine.
a) your b) yours c) you're d) you
4. That's my sister's bike, not
a) my b) mine c) me d) myself
5. I found my bag. Have you found?
a) you b) your c) yours d) yourself

C Writing

3 Write a paragraph of (80–100) words on "My best friends":

1. Who they are and their role in your life
2. What they look like or what they do at home
3. A special tradition or memory you share
4. Why they are important to you

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. Sara helps her dad cook lunch. (.....)
2. Omar sweeps the floor in the kitchen? (.....)

B) Listen again and complete:

3. Sara cuts the fresh carefully.
4. Omar feeds their small
5. They enjoy their parents very much.

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To means to look after children for a short time while their parents are away.
a) sit b) take place c) babysit d) take part
2. The internet can be very useful for learning new skills. The word "....." is an antonym of "useful".
a) uncaring b) useless c) interesting d) helpful
3. The door led to a secret room behind the library. We add the suffix "....." to "secret" to form an adverb.
a) -al b) -ly c) -ful d) -y
4. It's to give each one a chance to speak.
a) lucky b) fair c) weak d) careless

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

set – babysit – fix – role – caring

My family is very happy because everyone helps inside the house every day. My father has an important (1) in our home. He helps (2) broken toys and chairs in the living room. My mother is very (3) and kind to us. She cooks nice food for dinner. I like to help my parents too. Sometimes I (4) my little sister when they are busy. We all love to work together to keep our home tidy.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

My family is very important to me. We all have jobs to do at home. My father works hard at his office every day. When he comes home, he cooks dinner for us. My mother helps me with my homework. She is very smart and kind. My sister, Hana, washes the dishes after we eat. I clean the living room and feed our cat. We always say thank you to each other. We respect our parents and listen to them. Then, on Fridays, we go to the park together. We love spending time as a family. Helping each other makes our house a happy place. I love my family very much.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is
a) playing in the park b) feeding the cat
c) family roles and helping d) working in an office
2. The underlined word "smart" in the text means ".....".
a) clever b) sad c) angry d) bad

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does the father do when he comes home?
.....
4. Why is the house a happy place?
.....
5. Do you think it is important to help at home? Why?
.....

C The Story

5 A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. Dummling expected a reward when he gave food to the old man. (.....)
2. The golden goose has a strange magical power. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Who owned the hotel where Dummling stayed that night?
.....
4. If you were one of the three children, would you try to steal a feather? Why or why not?
.....

D**Writing****6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:**

1. Do you know Lina? This scarf is hers. (her)

.....

2. My mom loves flowers. She has those flowers in the garden. (hers)

.....

3. It's my new hat. (mine)

.....

4. We have all these books. (ours)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Adam and Malak are talking about shopping.

Adam : We go shopping every Friday morning.

Malak : (1)..... you buy food for the week?

Adam : Yes, we buy milk, bread, and fruit.

Malak : I (2)..... my mom carry the bags.

Adam : (3)..... the bags heavy for you, Malak?

Malak : No, they aren't.

Adam : Do you buy sweets at the shop?

Malak : Yes, I (4).....

8 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"Jobs you do at home"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Archaeologists work hard to ancient artifacts so future generations can see them.
a) buy b) restore c) block d) forget
2. The word "glorious" means something that is and worthy of admiration.
a) small b) majestic c) noisy d) broken
3. Our family has like visiting grandparents on Friday.
a) roles b) traditions c) caring d) babysit
4. During the ceremony, traditional music helped bring Egypt's heritage for people.
a) alive b) fair c) loyal d) hard
5. Both "ancient" and "....." are synonyms when describing civilizations like Pharaonic Egypt.
a) modern b) very new c) very old d) secret
6. The new exhibition includes interactive displays that allow visitors to history in a fun way.
a) invent b) explore c) shout d) lose
7. He became a after living in the country for many years.
a) citizen b) visitor c) tourist d) stranger
8. The parade route was with people waving flags and cheering proudly.
a) lined b) buried c) booked d) blocked
9. The Grand Egyptian Museum is a of national pride and cultural identity.
a) costume b) symbol c) vehicle d) chore
10. Many tourists come from all over the world to witness the beauty of the Giza Pyramids.
a) necessary b) breathtaking c) strict d) polite
11. The conservation center uses modern technology to priceless artifacts safely.
a) house b) disturb c) throw d) argue
12. A good citizen should the rules and show respect for historical sites.
a) think b) follow c) forget d) separate

13. "Unique" means something that is and unlike anything else.
 a) common b) normal c) special d) ordinary
14. The opening of the new museum was a moment for all Egyptians.
 a) proud b) lucky c) fair d) hardworking
15. Archaeologists carefully brush away the to uncover buried treasures.
 a) sea b) soil c) pride d) height

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. John is my cousin. That phone belongs to him. (his)

2. These are not your toys; they are theirs. (their)

3. The cookies belong to my sister and I. (ours)

4. Hend looked at the picture that belongs to our family. (ours)

5. That computer on the desk is my computer. (mine)

6. The dog belongs to Sara. This dog is small and black. (Her)

7. You do not need to buy a ticket for the baby. (don't have to)

8. It is necessary for the nurse to help the sick child. (must)

9. It is not allowed to draw on the clean white walls. (mustn't)

10. It is advisable for Farah to study English every day. (should)

11. It is necessary for Kareem to follow rules. (has to)

12. It is a bad idea to go outside without your shoes. (shouldn't)

13. It is forbidden to swim in the sea when waves are high. (mustn't)

14. It is necessary for Dalal to help her mom with cleaning. (must)

15. The watch on the table belongs to Mostafa. (his)

3 Read and complete the texts with the words in the box:

A)

gift – stone – balloons – celebrate – decorate

Today is a very special day for my little sister. We want to (1)..... her birthday with a fun party at home. Mom and I (2)..... the room with red and blue lights. I will blow up many colorful (3)..... to put on the chairs. I bought a nice (4)..... for her to open after we eat. It will be a big happy day for the whole family.

B)

preserve – modern – ancient – monuments – guide

Egypt is famous for its long and very great history. Many people travel here to see the (1)..... buildings and temples. The big stone (2)..... look very strong and powerful in the sand. A kind tour (3)..... tells everyone exciting stories about the past. We must work hard to (4)..... these special places for the future to see. Everyone feels proud when they visit our country and see its beauty.

4 Complete the following dialogs:

A) Kareem is asking about the school trip.

Kareem : Does our school have a trip?

Salwa : Yes, we are (1)..... to Giza.

Kareem : Are we visiting the (2)..... Egyptian Museum?

Salwa : Yes, we are visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum.

Kareem : What (3)..... does the bus leave?

Salwa : The bus leaves at eight.

Kareem : Are you excited about the trip?

Salwa : Yes, I (4)..... very happy about it.

B) Said and Nour are talking about chores at home.

Said : I have to clean the floor today.

Nour : Do you do that every day?

Said : No, I only do it (1)..... Saturdays.

Nour : My job is to (2)..... the dishes.

Said : (3)..... you like sweeping the floor?

Nour : No, I do not like it very much.

Said : (4)..... do you not like that chore?

Nour : The water is very cold in winter!

Unit 9

MAKING IT YOURSELF

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Read short texts about daily routines and Egyptian life to find main ideas and details.

Understand simple instructions and processes (e.g., making food, using machines).

Listening

Listen for specific information and sequence in short talks about routines or tasks.

Identify key details in everyday conversations.

Speaking

Describe routines, home activities, and how things work using clear steps.

Take part in role-plays, pair discussions, and short project presentations.

Writing

Write short instructional or descriptive paragraphs (e.g., recipes, daily routines).

Use linking and sequence words to organize ideas clearly.

Language

Use possessive " 's, s', and of " forms accurately.

Apply sequence words (first, next, then, finally) in writing and speaking.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

chopped (adj)	مفروم/مقطع	sauce (n)	صلصة
fold (ed) (v)	يطوى	spoonful (n)	ملء ملعقة
pickles (n)	مخللات	tahini (n)	طحينة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

add (ed) (v)	يضيف	loaf (n)	رغيف
amount (n)	كمية/مقدار	pour (ed) (v)	يصب/يسكب
flavor (n)	مذاق/طعم	seed (n)	بذرة
ingredients (n)	مكونات/مقادير	spoon (n)	ملعقة
liquid (n)	سائل	taste (d) (v)	يتذوق

Food طعام

cucumbers (n)	خيار	sesame (n)	سمسم
falafel (n)	فلافل/طعمية	tomatoes (n)	طماطم
lettuce (n)	خس	vegetables (n)	خضراوات/خضار
salad (n)	سلطة	vinegar (n)	خل

Adjectives for food صفات للطعام

crunchy (adj)	مقرمش	spicy (adj)	حار/متبل
fried (adj)	مقلي	sweet (adj)	حلو
salty (adj)	مالح	tasty/delicious (adj)	لذيذ/شهي

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

cut into	يقطع إلى	give energy	يعطى طاقة
for breakfast	للإفطار/على الإفطار	What kind of ...?	ما نوع ..؟

Read and complete with a word from the list:

give – frying – fried – pickles

- I like to eat eggs for breakfast.
- The jar of is on the table.
- A healthy breakfast can energy to your body all day.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

chore (n)	عمل منزلي/مهمة	housework (n)	أعمال منزلية
exercise (d) (v/n)	يمارس تمرين/تمرين	routine (n)	روتين يومي

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

closed (adj)	مغلق	later (adv)	لاحقًا/فيما بعد
daily (adj/adv)	يومي/يوميًا	parking lot (n)	موقف سيارات
desk (n)	مكتب	playground (n)	ملعب/ساحة لعب
ending (n)	نهاية/خاتمة	president (n)	رئيس
everyday (adj)	يومي	roof (n)	سقف
finish (ed) (v)	ينتهي/يُكمل	smell (ed) (v/n)	يشم/رائحة
job (n)	عمل/وظيفة/مهمة	song (n)	أغنية
kitchen (n)	مطبخ	tail (n)	ذيل

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

do the dishes	يغسل الأطباق	stay healthy	يبقى صحي
fun for	ممتع/مسلى لـ	stay organized	يبقى منظمًا
listen to music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى	stay tidy	يبقى مرتبًا
over time	مع مرور الوقت/بمرور الزمن	turn on	يشغل/يفتح

Read and complete with a word from the list:

lot – routine – desk – President

- 1 I follow a every morning to start my day.
- 2 There is a large parking next to the grocery store.
- 3 The works hard to make important decisions for our country.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
bend	ينحنى/يثني	bent	bent
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
shine	يلمع	shone	shone

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
add	يضيف	insert	يُدجج/يضيف	remove	يزيل
finish	ينهى/يكمل	complete	يكمل	start/begin	يبدأ
fold	يطوى	bend	يطوى/يثني	unfold	يفتح/يفرد
spicy	حار/متبل	hot	حار	bland	بلا طعم
sweet	حلو	sugary	حلو/سكري	unsweet/sugarless	غير حلو
thick	سميك/غليظ	large/big	كبير	thin	رفيع
turn on	يشغل/يفتح	switch on	يشغل/يفتح	turn/switch off	يغلق/يقفل

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
spoon (n)	ملعقة	-ful	تحول إلى اسم جديد		spoonful (n)	ملء ملعقة
crunch (v/n)	يقرمش/قمرمشة				crunchy (adj)	مقمرش
salt (n)	ملح	-y			salty (adj)	مالح
spice (n)	بهار/توابل		تحول إلى صفة		spicy (adj)	حار/متبل
chop (v)	يقطع/يفرم				chopped (adj)	مفروم/مقطع
fry (v)	يقلى	-ed			fried (adj)	مقلى
organize (v)	ينظم				organized (adj)	منظم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The chef will add more spice to make the food tasty. The antonym of "add" is ".....".
 a) insert b) remove c) fold d) chop
- My mom adds spice to the soup. We form the adjective of "spice" by removing "e" and adding the suffix ".....".
 a) -y b) -ed c) -ful d) -ly
- The chocolate cake was very sweet. The synonym of "sweet" is ".....".
 a) sugarless b) spicy c) thin d) sugary

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What traditional Egyptian foods do you like to eat?
- 2 Which is easier to make: a sandwich or salad? Why?

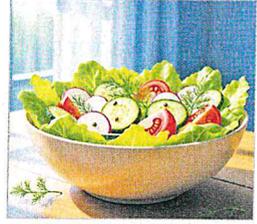
 Read the following text. Do all Egyptian families buy falafel?

Lesson 1

SB page 41

Making a **tasty**⁽¹⁾, and healthy falafel sandwich is quick. First, you need a loaf of **bread**⁽²⁾, some fried falafel, salad, and **tahini sauce**⁽³⁾. Put the bread on a clean plate. Then, open it carefully and place three or four **pieces**⁽⁴⁾ of falafel inside. Add some chopped tomatoes, **cucumbers**⁽⁵⁾, and **lettuce**⁽⁶⁾. Next, pour a little tahini sauce and a spoonful of pickles. Finally, **fold**⁽⁷⁾ the bread and enjoy your sandwich!

Many Egyptians love eating falafel for breakfast. Small shops sell it early in the morning in many parts of Egypt. Some families make it at home every weekend. It gives **energy**⁽⁸⁾ for school or work. My favorite breakfast is falafel with tea and cheese. My mom always says, "A good breakfast helps you start the day right!"



Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What ingredients do you need to make a falafel sandwich?
.....
- 2 When do Egyptians usually eat falafel?
.....
- 3 What do you add after the salad?
.....

(1) لذيذ

(2) خبز

(3) صوص الطحينة

(4) قطع

(5) خيار

(6) خس

(7) يطوى/يثنى

(8) طاقة

Listening Text



Pre-listening question:

- What do you do every day? Make a list with your partner.

Listen to the audio. What's Marwa talking about?

SB page 43

Marwa is talking about her daily routine and her family's **chores**⁽¹⁾. Every morning, she makes her bed at 7:00 a.m. and then **gets ready**⁽²⁾ for school. After classes, she comes home at 3:30 p.m. and helps with some of her family's housework so that the home stays **tidy**⁽³⁾. Marwa says it is Nader's job to wash the dishes, and his help makes the kitchen **shine**⁽⁴⁾. Sometimes they **turn on**⁽⁵⁾ their favorite songs and listen to music while doing the dishes, which makes the chore more fun for both of them. Marwa always finishes her homework before 4:00 p.m. because she likes to stay **organized**⁽⁶⁾. Later, she spends thirty minutes doing her **exercises**⁽⁷⁾ to stay healthy and strong, and this **routine**⁽⁸⁾ has become hers **over time**⁽⁹⁾.



(1) أعمال المنزل

(2) يستعد

(3) مرتب

(4) يلمع

(5) يشغل

(6) منظم

(7) تمارين

(8) روتين

(9) بمرور الوقت

Post-listening question:

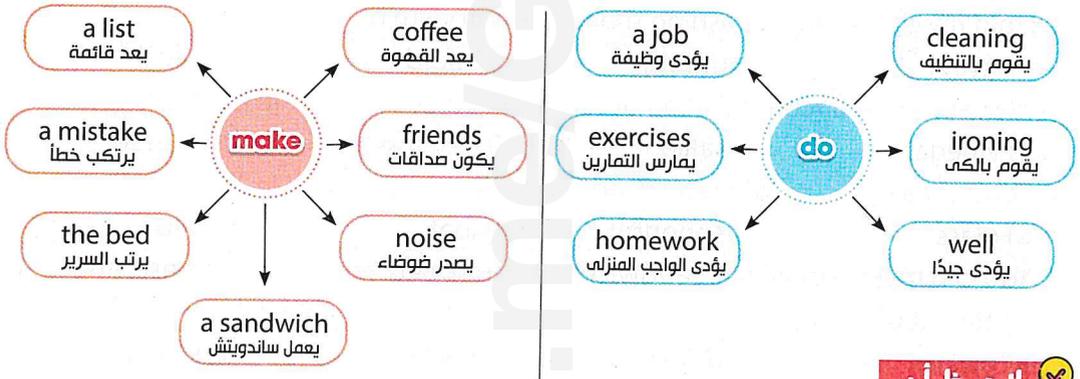
SB

Write True (T) or False (F):

- 1 Marwa makes her bed in the morning. (.....)
- 2 Nader helps with the dishes. (.....)
- 3 They listen to music while doing the dishes. (.....)
- 4 Marwa does her homework before 4:00 p.m. (.....)
- 5 Marwa exercises for half an hour. (.....)

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions	التعريفات		
chopped	مفروم/مقطع	cut into small pieces ⁽¹⁾	(1) قطع
fold	يطوى	to bend ⁽²⁾ something over itself	(2) يطوى
pickles	مخللات	vegetables kept in salty or vinegar ⁽³⁾ water	(3) خل
sauce	صلصة	a thick liquid ⁽⁴⁾ served with food for flavor	(4) سائل
spoonful	ملء ملعقة	the amount that fits in a spoon	(5) بذور السمسم
tahini	طحينة	a sauce made from sesame seeds ⁽⁵⁾	



لاحظ أن

1. "Make" is used when you are creating, producing, or forming something new that didn't exist before.

يتم استخدام كلمة "make" عندما تقوم بإنشاء أو إنتاج أو تشكيل شيء جديد لم يكن موجوداً من قبل.

2. "Do" is used when you are performing an action, task, or duty that is already established.

يتم استخدام "do" عندما تقوم بتنفيذ إجراء أو مهمة أو واجب تم إنشاؤه بالفعل.

Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I my homework every evening.
 a) do b) think c) take d) make
- 2 means a sauce made from sesame seeds
 a) Milk b) Sauce c) Tahini d) Fold
- 3 Don't noise in the library!
 a) give b) make c) appear d) do

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. To prepare the salad, Ali used a knife to the tomatoes into small pieces.
 a) pour b) fold c) chop d) add
2. The of this soup is very strong because it has garlic **مؤج** and lemon.
 a) size b) flavor c) price d) color
3. My mother always uses a of tahini when she makes the sauce for falafel.
 a) spoonful b) loaf c) flower d) piece
4. I fold my clothes after washing them. The antonym of "fold" is ".....".
 a) sweet b) unfold c) infold d) bend
5. We usually eat cucumbers, tomatoes, and lettuce together in a fresh green
 a) vinegar b) salad c) sesame d) cheese
6. I bought a of bread from the shop
 a) glass b) spoonful c) loaf d) kilo
7. You can make a delicious sandwich with chopped vegetables, cheese, and a little bit of
 a) pickles b) drinks c) spicy d) sweets
8. If you want to start the day right, you should eat something healthy breakfast.
 a) for b) on c) to d) in
9. We form the adjective from the word "crunch" by adding the suffix "....." to describe food that makes a sound when you bite it.
 a) -ful b) -ly c) -ity d) -y
10. Don't forget to some vinegar to the sauce to give it some taste.
 a) add b) boil c) cut d) fit

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tasty – make – do – ingredients – cheese

Yesterday, I was very hungry after school so I went to the kitchen. I decided to (1) a big sandwich for my lunch. My mom bought fresh (2) from the market in the morning. I carefully put some chopped tomatoes and white (3) on the bread. The food was (4) and I ate it all quickly. It is really important to eat good food to be strong and healthy every single day.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. "Housework" means all the small people do to keep their home clean and tidy.
 - a) plates
 - b) kitchens
 - c) chores
 - d) dishes
2. I must finish my homework. The synonym of the verb "finish" is ".....".
 - a) later
 - b) start
 - c) turn
 - d) complete
3. My dad organizes his desk before he sleeps. To form the adjective from the verb "organize", we delete "e" and add the suffix ".....".
 - a) -ed
 - b) -ly
 - c) -ness
 - d) -ion
4. Every evening, my brother helps mom to the dishes after dinner.
 - a) spend
 - b) make
 - c) do
 - d) stay
5. After school, I like to relax and music to forget about my homework for a while.
 - a) do
 - b) listen to
 - c) look for
 - d) finish
6. My dad says that if we clean a little each day, it becomes easy time.
 - a) at
 - b) on
 - c) for
 - d) over
7. Please, don't leave your books on the floor; try to keep your desk
 - a) healthy
 - b) daily
 - c) tidy
 - d) fun
8. I have a daily that helps me stay organized.
 - a) work
 - b) desk
 - c) routine
 - d) tail
9. In the morning, brush your teeth as a/an habit.
 - a) closed
 - b) daily
 - c) ending
 - d) day
10. Adam left his blue car in the large
 - a) parking lot
 - b) waiting hall
 - c) office
 - d) desk

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

exercise – open – desk – closed – playground

I go to a very nice school near my house. Every morning, I sit at my small wooden (1)..... and study very hard with my books. At break time, we run to the large (2)..... to play games with our friends. Sometimes the gate is (3)....., so we cannot go outside to play there. We like to (4)..... in the gym to stay strong and healthy. It is always fun to be active.

Possessives ('s, s', of)

الملكية باستخدام ('s, s', of)

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

It is a sunny Saturday. (Ahmed's/Ahmeds') family is going to the zoo. They get into the car. The car engine starts with a loud noise. At the zoo, they see two monkeys. The (monkey's/monkey's) tails are very long. They also see a group of kids playing. The (children's/childrens') ball rolls near Ahmed. They sit down for lunch on the grass. The (color of the blanket/blanket's color) is red and white. Everyone is happy to have a fun day together!

1. Possessive ('s)

A Singular nouns أسماء مفردة

-  People
-  Animals
-  Time
-  Places

's

الاسم
المملوك

e.g. People — 's
الأشخاص

- Mona's bag is on the chair.
- Ali and Nada's father is a doctor.

Animals — 's
الحيوانات

- The cat's food bowl was empty.
- The bird's feathers are colorful.

Time — 's
الوقت/الزمن

- Today's weather is perfect for playing.
- Yesterday's homework was difficult.

Places — 's
الأماكن

- The school's library has many books.
- The London's museum is wonderful.

B Irregular plural جمع غير منتظم

-  children
-  feet
-  women

's

الاسم
المملوك

e.g. • The children's voice was calm.
• My feet's size is 39.

• Women's dresses are colorful.

2. Possessive (s')

✓ Plural nouns end with s أسماء جمع تنتهي بالـ s

 girls
 teachers
 parents



الاسم
 المملوك

- e.g.
- The boys' clothes are clean.
 - The teachers' room is very organized.

3. Possessive using (of)


 الأسم المملوك
 (مفرد أو جمع)



اسم المالك
 (مفرد أو جمع)

e.g.

Things الأشياء	• The door of the house was broken. (The house door)
Abstract ideas الأفكار المجردة	• The end of the story was surprising.
Long phrases الجمل/العبارات الطويلة	• The roof of the old house needs to be repaired soon.

Got it?

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1 This car belongs to Ayman and it is very new. (Ayman's)

- نبدأ الجملة (Ayman's) ثم الشيء الذي يملكه (car) وكتابة باقى الجملة الثانية مع حذف belong to.

- Ayman's car is very new.

2 The chair leg is broken. (of)

- نبدأ الجملة بالاسم المملوك (leg) قبل (of) وبعدها المالك (chair).

- The leg of the chair is broken.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I saw bike parked near the school gate this morning.
 - a) Ali
 - b) Alis
 - c) Ali's
 - d) Alis'
2. The books are on the big desk in the classroom.
 - a) student's
 - b) students'
 - c) students
 - d) student
3. Please, look at the; it has a nice picture.
 - a) cover of the book
 - b) book's cover
 - c) books cover
 - d) cover's book
4. We went to house to play with her new toys.
 - a) Laila's
 - b) Lailas
 - c) Lailas'
 - d) Laila
5. The room is at the end of the long hall. They always gather **يتجمع** there.
 - a) teacher's
 - b) teachers
 - c) teachers'
 - d) teacher

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Marwan has a bag. It is on the floor. (Marwan's)
.....
2. The long tail of the cat is very soft. (cat's)
.....
3. I saw the new car of my brother outside yesterday. (brother's)
.....
4. The children have new toys. (The children's)
.....
5. The garden of the house is full of green trees. (house's)
.....
6. Sarah has a dress. It looked very beautiful. (Sarah's)
.....
7. Omar has a smart cell phone. (Omar's)
.....
8. The chair's leg is brown and very strong. (of)
.....
9. I found the keys of my sister this morning. (sister's)
.....
10. Rana owns a skirt. It is long and blue. (Rana's)
.....

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Can you see the tail wagging يهتز happily in the garden?
a) cat b) cats c) cat's d) cats'
2. I found pencil case under the chair in the classroom.
a) Omar b) Omars c) Omar's d) Omars'
3. My favorite food is pizza. They both share one every week.
a) brother's b) brothers' c) brothers d) brother
4. My dad fixed the yesterday because it was not working.
a) doors car b) door of the car c) cars door d) door's car
5. brother is very tall and plays basketball for the team.
a) Hoda's b) Hodas c) Hodas' d) Hoda

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Ahmed has a ball; it's under the table. (Ahmed's)
.....
2. The car window is open and lets the air in. (of)
.....
3. Mazen had a bike. It was broken down. (Mazen's)
.....
4. The girls have blue and red pens. (girls')
.....
5. The book cover is torn and very old. (of)
.....
6. My uncle has a big villa. (My uncle's)
.....
7. The new computer for Waleed is very fast. (Waleed's)
.....
8. The food of the cat is in the small bowl. (cat's)
.....
9. The computer of Mr. Magdi is turned off. (Mr. Magdi's)
.....
10. The school name is written on the gate. (of)
.....

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

C

SKILLS

Speaking



1. Asking about favorite sandwich



What's your favorite sandwich?

ما هو ساندويتشك المفضل؟

My favorite sandwich is the falafel sandwich.

ساندويتشي المفضل هو ساندويتش الفلافل.



What ingredients does it have?

ما هي المكونات التي يحتوي عليها؟

It has falafel, salad, and bread.

يحتوي على فلافل، سلطة، وخبز.



Who usually makes it?

من عادةً يصنعه؟

My mom usually makes it.

أمي عادةً تصنعه.



Why do you like it?

لماذا تحبه؟

I like it because it is tasty and healthy.

أحبه لأنه لذيذ وصحي.



2. Daily routine

الروتين اليومي



What do you do every day?

ماذا تفعل كل يوم؟

I go to school and study every day.

أذهب إلى المدرسة وأدرس كل يوم.



What time do you do your homework?

متى تتجز واجبك المنزلي؟

I do my homework at 5 p.m.

أقوم بواجباتي المنزلية في الساعة الخامسة مساءً.



Who makes breakfast in your family?

من يُعِدّ وجبة الإفطار في عائلتك؟

My mother makes breakfast in my family.

والدتي تعد وجبة الإفطار في عائلتي.



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Complete the following dialog:

▶ Omar likes chicken, cheese, and lettuce sandwiches.

Malak: What is your favorite food to eat, Omar?

Omar : I really love eating (1).....

Malak: What (2)..... of sandwich do you like?

Omar : I like chicken, cheese, and lettuce.

Malak: Who makes this tasty sandwich for you?

Omar : My (3)..... usually makes it for my lunch.

Malak: (4)..... do you like to eat it?

Omar : Because it's healthy.



How to write about a daily routine

كيفية الكتابة عن الروتين اليومي

1 Morning routine:

الروتين الصباحي:

- First, I wake up at seven o'clock.
- Then, I wash my face and brush my teeth.
- Finally, I have breakfast and drink juice.

2 Daytime activities:

الأنشطة النهارية:

- After breakfast, I go to school by bus.
- I study Math and English in class.
- I have lunch with my family at noon.

Daily routine

الروتين اليومي

3 In the evening:

في المساء:

- First, I do my homework.
- Then, I play games with my sister.
- Finally, we eat dinner at seven.

4 At night:

ليلاً:

- First, I watch TV with my family.
- Finally, I go to bed at ten o'clock.

اقرأ هذا النموذج العجيب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“Daily routine”

My daily routine starts early. I wake up at seven o'clock every day. First, I wash my face and brush my teeth quickly. Then, I eat cereal and drink juice for breakfast. After that, I go to school by bus. I study Math and English in class, and I eat lunch with my friends at noon. In the afternoon, I come home and do my homework. Then I play games with my sister. We eat dinner together at seven o'clock. I read a book and go to bed at ten.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. Hazem makes a burger sandwich. (.....)
2. He puts tahini on top of the food. (.....)

B) Listen again and complete:

3. Hazem gets some hot from the kitchen.
4. He puts falafel balls in the sandwich.
5. He eats this food for his every morning.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sister always adds a of sugar to her tea.
a) spoonful b) pan c) seed d) kilo
2. The falafel sandwich was so!
a) weak b) strong c) crunchy d) liquid
3. To make a healthy meal, you should use fresh like cucumbers, tomatoes, and lettuce.
a) vinegar b) vegetables c) spicy d) sesame
4. The ice on the lake is too thin to walk on safely. "Thin" is the antonym of ".....".
a) sweet b) thick c) fried d) crunchy

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

pour – vegetables – spoonful – spoon – cucumbers

Salad is a great dish because it has many vitamins. You can cut different fresh (1) into small pieces. I like to chop red tomatoes and green (2) for my bowl. Then, you can (3) some olive oil and vinegar on top. You do not need a fork, you can use a big (4) to mix it well. Eating fresh salad helps your body grow and feel very good.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Adam got a colorful kite. (Adam's)
.....
2. The dresses of the women are very bright. (women's)
.....
3. The door handle is cold and made of metal. (of)
.....
4. That black jacket belongs to Sameh. (Sameh's)
.....

5 Complete the following dialog:

Hala likes a big cheese pizza.

Ramez : What is your favorite food to eat for dinner?

Hala : My (1)..... food is pizza.

Ramez : Why do you prefer pizza, Hala?

Hala : (2)..... it's tasty.

Ramez : What (3)..... are there on the pizza?

Hala : It has tomatoes and green peppers.

Ramez : (4)..... usually makes this pizza for you?

Hala : My mom makes it for us on Fridays.

6 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favorite sandwich"

.....
.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The ears of the rabbit are long and very funny. (rabbit's)
.....
2. The house has a wide roof. (of)
.....
3. The pencils on the table belong to the students. (students')
.....
4. The house of Mr. Taher is in New Cairo. (Mr. Taher's)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

banner (n)	لافتة/راية	list (n)	قائمة
celebration (n)	احتفال	special (adj)	خاص/مميز
clean-up (n)	تنظيف	surprised (adj)	مندهش/متفاجئ
decorate (d) (v)	يزين	unforgettable (adj)	لا يُنسى

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

aunt (n)	عمة/خالدة	member (n)	عضو
birthday (n)	عيد ميلاد	occasion (n)	مناسبة
cousin (n)	ابن (ابنة) عم/عمة/خال/خالدة	party (n)	حفلة
celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل بـ	preparation (n)	استعداد/تحضير
decoration (n)	زينة/ديكور	school day (n)	يوم دراسي
graduation (n)	تخرج	snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
guest (n)	ضيف	step (n)	خطوة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at the end of	في نهاية	make a plan	يضع/يعد خطة
bake the cake	يخبز الكعكة	on the wall	على الحائط/الجدار
do a clean-up	يقوم بتنظيف	prepare for	يستعد/يتجهز لـ
do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق	put up	يعلق
get ready for	يستعد لـ	turn off	يطفىئ
make a banner	يصنع/يجهر لافتة		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

graduation – make – do – unforgettable

- 1 Will you help me the shopping later?
- 2 Sagda is excited about her party.
- 3 The wedding was beautiful and

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
say يقول	said	said

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
special	خاص/مميز	unique	مميز/فريد	common	شائع
surprised	مندهش/متفاجئ	astonished	مندهش	unsurprised	غير مندهش
unforgettable	لا يُنسى	memorable	لا يُنسى	forgettable	قابل للنسيان
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	love/like	يجب	hate/dislike	يكره

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
celebrate (v)	يحتفل	-ion	تحول إلى اسم		celebration (n)	احتفال
decorate (v)	يزين/يزخرف				decoration (n)	زينة/ديكور
graduate (v)	يتخرج				graduation (n)	تخرج
prepare (v)	يحضر	-ation			preparation (n)	استعداد/تحضير
surprise (v/n)	يفاجئ/يذهش/مفاجأة	-ed	تحول إلى صفة		surprised (adj)	مندهش/متفاجئ
forgettable (adj)	قابل للنسيان/ينسى	un-	تعطى عكس المعنى		unforgettable (adj)	لا يُنسى

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My graduation is a very special day. The synonym of "special" is ".....".
 a) unique b) common c) usual d) memorable
- Many people will enjoy the New Year's Eve. The antonym of "enjoy" is ".....".
 a) like b) decorate c) love d) dislike
- I like to celebrate my birthday. To change "celebrate" into a noun, delete "e" and add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ed b) -ion c) -ment d) -ation
- The event was pleasant but forgettable. We add the prefix "....." to the adjective "forgettable" to form the opposite.
 a) un- b) en- c) dis- d) in-

Reading Text

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What family occasions do you celebrate (birthday, graduation, Ramadan, etc.)?
- 2 What do family members make or do to prepare for these occasions?
- 3 Do you like helping at celebrations? Why or why not?

 Read the following text. **Getting ready for my cousin's Birthday party.** SB Page 45

Last Friday, our family prepared a birthday party for my cousin, Omar. Everyone worked together to make the day **special**⁽¹⁾. In the morning, my mother and aunt made a plan and wrote a **list of**⁽²⁾ what we needed: decorations, snacks, juice, and a birthday cake. My sister and I helped our father do the shopping from the supermarket.



At home, we started **decorating**⁽³⁾ the living room. First, we put up colorful balloons and lights. Then, we made a big birthday **banner**⁽⁴⁾ and stuck it on the wall. After that, my aunt made sandwiches while my mother prepared the cake. We also did a quick **clean-up**⁽⁵⁾ to make the house look nice before the guests arrived.



When Omar arrived, we turned off the lights and shouted, "Happy Birthday!" He was so **surprised**⁽⁶⁾ and happy. We played games, took photos, and enjoyed the food together. At the end of the day, my grandmother said, "When a family works together, every **celebration**⁽⁷⁾ becomes unforgettable."

(1) خاص

(2) قائمة من

(3) تزيين

(4) لافتة

(5) تنظيف

(6) مندهش

(7) احتفال

SB

Post-reading questions:

1 What did the family put on the wall during the decoration?

.....

2 Who prepared the sandwiches?

.....

3 What did the writer and his sister help their father do?

.....

4 Why did the family clean the house before the guests arrived?

.....

5 What did the grandmother say at the end of the day?

.....

Talking about a family occasion **التحدث عن مناسبة عائلية**

online



What does your family usually do to prepare for special occasions?

ماذا تفعل عائلتك عادةً للاستعداد للمناسبات الخاصة؟

We usually clean and decorate the house.

عادةً نظف ونزين المنزل.



Who makes the food in your family celebrations?

من يجهز الطعام في احتفالات عائلتك؟

My mother makes the food for our celebrations.

أمي تُعدّ الطعام لاحتفالاتنا.



What games or activities do you enjoy during family occasions?

ما الألعاب أو الأنشطة التي تستمتع بها خلال المناسبات العائلية؟

I enjoy playing simple games and taking photos.

أستمتع بلعب ألعاب بسيطة والتقاط الصور.



How can children help make the event better?

كيف يمكن للأطفال المساعدة في جعل المناسبة أفضل؟

Children can help by cleaning and preparing the table.

يمكن للأطفال المساعدة بالتنظيف، وتجهيز المائدة.



What was your favorite family celebration and why?

ما هي احتفاليته العائلية المفضلة ولماذا؟

My favorite celebration was my cousin's birthday because everyone was happy.

كانت احتفاليته المفضلة هي عيد ميلاد ابن عمي؛ لأنه كان الجميع سعداء.



Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ Adam is asking Sarah about her next family occasion.

Adam: Hi Sarah, do you have a family party soon?

Sarah: Yes Adam, it is my little sister's (1)..... today.

Adam: That is great, how (2)..... is she now?

Sarah: She is five years old.

Adam: (3)..... is going to make the birthday cake?

Sarah: My mom is going to make a chocolate cake.

Adam: What did you buy for her?

Sarah: I (4)..... a new doll for her.



How to write about a family occasion you celebrated

كيف تكتب عن مناسبة عائلية احتفلت بها

1 What was that occasion?

ماذا كانت تلك المناسبة؟

- The family celebrated my grandmother's eightieth birthday.
- We celebrated the party last Saturday afternoon.

2 How did you prepare for this occasion?

كيف كان استعدادكم لهذه المناسبة؟

- My mother and I decorated the living room with balloons and lights.
- Everyone was happy and the house was full of music.

A family occasion you celebrated

مناسبة عائلية احتفلت بها

3 What was the key moments?

ما هي اللحظات المهمة؟

- All the family members came to enjoy the special day.
- We ate a very big cake and delicious homemade food.
- My uncle hung a beautiful picture of my grandmother on the wall.

4 How did you feel in that day?

كيف كان شعورك في ذلك اليوم؟

- I felt surprised and very happy to see my family all together.
- It was an unforgettable and warm day for us.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“My grandmother's birthday”

Last Saturday, our whole family came together to celebrate my grandmother's eightieth birthday. My mother and I worked hard to decorate the living room with colorful balloons and pretty lights. All the relatives أقارب came to enjoy the special party, and the house was full of music and laughter. We ate a very big and delicious chocolate cake. A really unforgettable moment was when my uncle hung a beautiful old picture of her. It was a wonderful and happy day for everyone.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Hanaa felt very when she saw the birthday cake on the table; it was really amazing.
 - a) surprised
 - b) memorable
 - c) unsurprised
 - d) common
2. My family always gets together to different occasions.
 - a) stick
 - b) celebrate
 - c) hang
 - d) surprise
3. They decided to the classroom with colorful balloons and a big banner.
 - a) make
 - b) enjoy
 - c) invite
 - d) decorate
4. The children had a/an time at the school festival last weekend; they were very happy.
 - a) common
 - b) unsurprised
 - c) unforgettable
 - d) ready
5. Before the party, we need to do the shopping. "Do the shopping" means to
 - a) bake the cake
 - b) invite guests
 - c) buy things
 - d) turn off lights
6. We hung the colorful banner the wall so everyone could see it clearly.
 - a) on
 - b) at
 - c) for
 - d) in
7. Next week, we'll celebrate grandpa's birthday. We remove "e" and add the suffix "....." to the verb "celebrate" to form its noun.
 - a) -ed
 - b) -ion
 - c) un-
 - d) -ly
8. I was not surprised by the loud noise; I expected it. The synonym of "surprised" is ".....".
 - a) common
 - b) forgettable
 - c) uncommon
 - d) astonished
9. Each of the team has an important role.
 - a) member
 - b) guest
 - c) stranger
 - d) enemy
10. To have a successful event, you should always for it.
 - a) do
 - b) tell
 - c) prepare
 - d) repair

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ready – banner – guest – list – clean-up

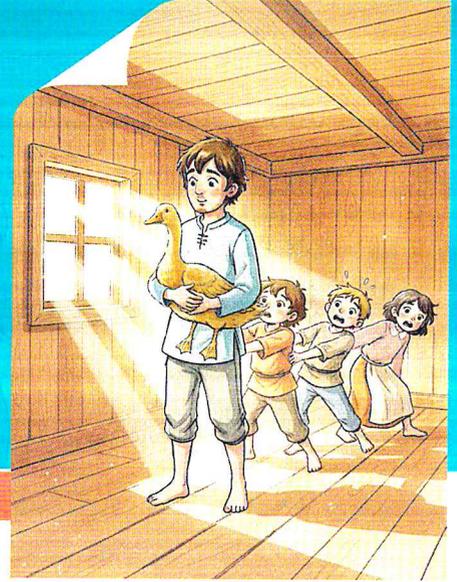
Our class wants to make the school look very beautiful. The teacher wrote a long (1)..... of important things to do today. First, we need to do a big (2)..... in the dirty classroom. Then, we will paint a nice red (3)..... for the front door. Everyone is working hard to get (4)..... for the school celebration next week. We are excited to show our parents the school. It will look amazing and very clean.

3

Chapter Three: The Goose's Magic

Chapter (3) in points:

الفصل الثالث في نقاط



1 Dummling stayed at a small hotel with his golden goose.

بات دوملينج في فندق صغير مع إوزته الذهبية.

2 The hotel owner's three children tried to steal a golden feather.

حاول أبناء مالك الفندق الثلاثة سرقة ريشة ذهبية.

3 As soon as the eldest touched the goose, his hand stuck to it.

بمجرد أن لمس الابن الأكبر الإوزة، التصقت يده بها.

4 The second child tried to pull him away, but he got stuck too.

حاول الابن الثاني سحبه، لكنه التصق أيضًا.

5 Then the youngest child touched them and became stuck as well.

لمسهم الابن الأصغر، إياهم، فلتصق بهم هو الآخر.

6 Dummling left the hotel without knowing they were stuck.

غادر دوملينج الفندق دون أن يعلم أنهم ملتصقون.

7 The three children had to follow him down the road, stuck together.

اضطر الأطفال الثلاثة إلى تتبعه في الطريق، وهم ملتصقون معًا.

8 People laughed at the strange sight, but Dummling just kept walking.

ضحك الناس على هذا المنظر الغريب، لكن دوملينج واصل سيره.

9 The golden goose's magic protected it from greedy people.

سحر الإوزة الذهبية حماها من الأشخاص الطمّاعين.

10 Dummling's kindness kept him safe, while greed brought trouble.

حافظ لطف دوملينج على سلامته، بينما جلب الجشع المتاعب.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

attached (adj)	مترفق/ملاحق	puzzled (adj)	حائر/مرتبك
attract (ed) (v)	يجذب	stick (v) (stuck/stuck)	يلتصق
curious (adj)	فضولى	unaware (adj)	غير مدرك
hotel (n)	فندق	hotel owner (n)	صاحب الفندق

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

attention (n)	انتباه	sight (n)	منظر/مشهد
brightly (adv)	بشكل ساطع	situation (n)	موقف
gather (ed) (v)	يجمع/يتجمع	stare (d) (v)	يحملق
glow (ed) (v)	يتوهج/يضيء	steal (v)	يسرق
knowledge (n)	معرفة	strange (adj)	غريب

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

act out of greed	يتصرف بدافع الطمع	stick to	يلتصق بـ
afraid of	خائف من	to his surprise	لدهشته
attract attention	يجذب الانتباه	unable to + inf.	غير قادر على
break free	يتحرر/يطلق سراحه	unaware of	غير مدرك لـ/غير واع بـ
lead to	يؤدى إلى	wake up	يستيقظ
pick up	يلتقط/يجمع	walk down the road	يمشى بطول الطريق

Definitions التعريفات

attached	مترفق/ملاحق	joined with ⁽¹⁾ something or someone	(1) متصل بـ
attract	يجذب	to pull ⁽²⁾ to someone or something	(2) يسحب
curious	فضولى	wanting to know or learn something	(3) مشوش
puzzled	حائر/مرتبك	feeling confused ⁽³⁾ because you don't understand something	(4) مثبت
stuck	ملتصق	fixed ⁽⁴⁾ in one place and can't be moved	(5) معرفة
unaware	غير واع/مدرك	'have no knowledge ⁽⁵⁾ of a situation ⁽⁶⁾	(6) موقف

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Who helped the old man?
- 2 What do you think might happen if someone acts out of greed **بِدافع الجشع**?

SB page 47

Chapter Three: The Goose's Magic

When Dummling brought the **goose**⁽¹⁾ to the hotel where he stayed, **curious**⁽²⁾ people gathered to look at it. The goose glowed brightly, attracting everyone's attention. The **hotel owner's**⁽³⁾ three children tried to steal one of its golden feathers.

(1) اوزة

(2) فضولى

(3) مالك الفندق

(4) التصف

(5) غير مدرك

(6) مفاجأة/دهشة

(7) سحرى

(8) منظر غريب

(9) يتتبع

(10) يتحرر

Why did the hotel owner's children try to touch the golden goose?

But as soon as the eldest touched the goose, his hand **stuck**⁽⁴⁾ fast. The second son tried to help, but he also stuck. Then the youngest son, too, became attached.

In the morning, Dummling woke up, **unaware**⁽⁵⁾ of what had happened. He picked up the goose and left the hotel. To his **surprise**⁽⁶⁾, the three children followed him, still stuck to the **magical**⁽⁷⁾ bird.

What happened when the three children touched the goose?

People stared as they walked down the road, laughing at the **strange sight**⁽⁸⁾. Dummling, though puzzled, continued walking, with the goose under his arm and the three children **following**⁽⁹⁾ him, unable to **break free**⁽¹⁰⁾.

How did Dummling react when he saw the children following him?

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. What did Dummling bring to the hotel? ما الذي أحضره دوملينج إلى الفندق؟

- He brought the goose to the hotel.

2. What was special about the goose? ما المميز في الإوزة؟

- The goose glowed brightly, attracting everyone's attention.

3. What did the three children try to steal? ماذا حاول الأطفال الثلاثة أن يسرقوا؟

- They tried to steal one of the goose's golden feathers.

4. What happened when they touched the goose? ماذا حدث عندما لمسوها؟

- Their hands stuck to it.

5. How did people react when they saw the group walking? كيف تصرف الناس عندما رأوا المجموعة؟

- They stared and laughed.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think the goose's magic worked this way? لماذا تعتقد أن سحر الإوزة عمل بهذه الطريقة؟

- To teach greedy people a lesson in a harmless but funny way.

2. How is Dummling different from the children in this chapter? كيف يختلف دوملينج عن الأطفال في هذه الفصل؟

- He is honest and calm; they are greedy.

3. Why is Dummling puzzled but not frightened by the situation? لماذا كان دوملينج مرتبكاً ولم يكن خائفاً من الموقف؟

- Because he is unaware of the situation and appears to be simple and calm by nature.

4. What would happen if a kind person touched the golden goose? ماذا سيحدث لو لمس شخص لطيف الإوزة الذهبية؟

- Probably nothing bad. Maybe the magic only affects greedy people.

5. How does this chapter show that actions have consequences? كيف يظهر هذا الفصل أن الأفعال لها عواقب؟

- The children acted greedily بجشع , so they got stuck. Dummling acted kindly, so he was protected.

Chapter 3 Exercises



SB page 48

1 Match the words from column (A) with their meanings from column (B):

A

1. curious
2. attached
3. puzzled
4. attract
5. stuck
6. unaware

B

- a) joined with something or someone
- b) wanting to know or learn something
- c) fixed in one place and can't be moved
- d) have no knowledge of a situation
- e) to pull to someone or something
- f) feeling confused because you don't understand something

2 Read and put True (T) or False (F):

1. The hotel owner's sons were afraid of the goose. (.....)
2. The goose had a magical power that made people stick to it. (.....)
3. Only one son tried to take a golden feather. (.....)
4. Dummling knew that the sons were stuck to the goose. (.....)
5. People laughed when they saw Dummling and the boys walking down the road. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

1. What happened first: the eldest son touched the goose or Dummling woke up?
.....
2. What do the boys' actions tell us about their personalities?
.....
3. How do you think Dummling felt when he saw the three boys following him?
.....

4 Put these events in the correct order:

1. The youngest boy touched the goose. (.....)
2. Dummling left the inn. (.....)
3. The eldest boy touched the goose. (.....)

5 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

1. If you were one of the sons, what would you do differently?
.....
2. How does this part of the story show that greed can lead to problems?
.....

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Dummling stayed at a
 a) palace b) hotel c) school d) castle
- The hotel owner's children wanted to a golden feather.
 a) count b) steal c) paint d) sell
- When they touched the goose, their hands fast.
 a) wet b) stuck c) small d) cold
- The goose had power that made people stick to it.
 a) funny b) magical c) loud d) simple
- People on the road when they saw the strange group.
 a) cried b) ran c) laughed d) slept

2 Write True (T) or False (F):

- Dummling knew the children were stuck before he left the hotel. (.....)
- The golden goose glowed and attracted curious people. (.....)
- Only one child touched the goose. (.....)
- The children could easily pull their hands away. (.....)
- Dummling walked calmly even though people were laughing. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- Why did the children touch the golden goose?

- What happened after the eldest child touched it?

- How many children got stuck to the goose?

- How did Dummling feel when he saw them following him?

- What lesson does this chapter teach about stealing?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The movie was so unforgettable that I found it completely
 a) special b) surprised c) memorable d) breakable
2. After the party, we did a quick to make the house tidy again.
 a) make-up b) clean-up c) repair d) meal
3. The students worked hard to banners for the school's science fair.
 a) invite b) make c) touch d) celebrate
4. They decided to decorate the classroom for the party. The noun form of the verb "decorate" is made by deleting "e" and adding the suffix ".....".
 a) -ion b) -ation c) -ed d) -ness

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

My family had a big party last Friday. It was my grandfather's birthday. We all went to his house in the afternoon. My mother made a **huge** chocolate cake. It looked very delicious. My cousins, Adam and Sara, came too. We played games in the garden for hours. The sun was shining brightly. My grandfather was very happy to see everyone. He opened his presents with a big smile. I gave him a funny blue hat. He put it on his head and laughed. We ate pizza and drank juice. At night, we sang songs together. It was a wonderful day for my whole family. I love them very much.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The text is mainly about a
 a) school trip b) birthday party c) football game d) summer holiday
2. The word "huge" in the text means very
 a) very small b) very big c) sad d) cold

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Who made the chocolate cake for the party?

4. How do you know that the grandfather was having fun?

5. Why do you think it is good to spend time with family?

The Story

3 A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. The goose looked ordinary and did not attract attention. (.....)
2. The second child was able to free the eldest child. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Who tried to steal the golden feather?
.....

4. Would you like to touch the golden goose if you saw it? Why or why not?
.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Tarek has a car. The car will be washed tomorrow. (Tarek's)
.....
2. The tail of the mouse is long and very thin. (mouse's)
.....
3. The notebook page is very colorful. (of)
.....
4. The man has an old and brown hat. (man's)
.....

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"A family occasion you don't forget"

.....
.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The boys own blue and white shirts. (boys')
.....
2. The laptop screen is bright and very clear. (of)
.....
3. Jana bought a new doll. The doll is sitting on the bed. (Jana's)
.....
4. The nest of the bird is high in the tree. (bird's)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

mixture (n)	خليط/مزيج	smooth (adj)	ناعم/أملس
layer (n)	طبقة	sweetness (n)	حلاوة المذاق

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

drawer (n)	درج	mixed (adj)	مختلط/مدمج/متنوع
edge (n)	حافة	mop (ped) (v)	يمسح الأرض
extra (adj)	إضافي/زائد	neatly (adv)	بشكل مرتب/بأناقة
gently (adv)	بلطف/يرفق	recipe (n)	وصفة طهي
homemade (adj)	منزلي الصنع	rush (ed) (v)	يسرع/يندفع

Food طعام

butter (n)	زبدة	hot chocolate (n)	شوكولاتة ساخنة/كافو ساخن
cheddar (n)	جبنة شيدر	mozzarella (n)	جبنة موزاريلا
chocolate (n)	شوكولاتة	noodles (n)	نودلز/شعيرية
cookies (n)	بسكويت/كوكيز	olives (n)	زيتون
dough (n)	عجين/عجينة	pancake (n)	بان كيك
feta (n)	جبنة فيتا/فيتا	strawberries (n)	فراولة
flour (n)	دقيق	toppings (n)	إضافات
fruit salad (n)	سلطة فواكه	yeast (n)	خميرة
honey (n)	عسل		

Verbs for food أفعال للطعام

bake (d) (v)	يخبز	mix (ed) (v)	يخلط/يمزج
boil (ed) (v)	يغلي/يسلق	peel (ed) (v)	يقشر
flip (ped) (v)	يقلب	roll (ed) out (v)	يفرد/يفرش العجين
heat (ed) (v)	يسخن	stir (red) (v)	يقلب

Adjectives for food صفات للطعام			
creamy (adj)	كريمي/قشدي	rich (adj)	غني/دسم
fluffy (adj)	منفوخ/طري	scrambled (adj)	مخفوف/مقلَّب
Cooking equipment معدات الطبخ			
bowl (n)	وعاء/طبق عميق	pan (n)	مقلاة/صينية طهي
fork (n)	شوكة	plate (n)	طبق
kitchen machine (n)	آلة مطبخ	table spoon (n)	ملعقة طعام/كبيرة
oven (n)	فرن		

Language Expressions and Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر			
do the laundry	يقوم بالغسيل	on each side	على كل جانب
in a round shape	بشكل دائري	start by	يبدأ بـ
make sure	يتأكد/يتحقق من	turn over	يقلب

Read and complete with a word from the list:

make – by – at – gently – mix

Checkpoint

- 1 Please, close the door so you do not wake the baby.
- 2 We should sure we didn't miss any steps in this recipe.
- 3 Can you the flour and sugar in the big bowl?
- 4 Start washing your hands before you cook anything.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
rise تزداد/تعلو	rose	risen
spin يحدور	span/spun	spun
sweep يكنس	swept	swept

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning) مرادفها	Antonym (opposite) عكسها
extra	إضافي/زائد	more/additional أكثر/إضافي	main أساسي
smooth	ناعم/أملس	gentle لطيف	rough خشن
rush	يسرع/يندفع	hurry يسرع	slow down يبطئ

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
gentle (adj)	لطيف	-ly	تحول إلى حال	gently (adv)	بلطف/برفق
neat (adj)	مرتب			neatly (adv)	بشكل مرتب/بأناقة
sweet (adj)	حلو	-ness	تحول إلى اسم	sweetness (n)	حلاوة المذاق
mix (v)	يخلط	-ture		mixture (n)	خليط/مزيج
mix (v)	يخلط	-ed	تحول إلى صفة	mixed (adj)	مختلط/مدمج
cream (n)	كريم	-y		creamy (adj)	كريم/قشدي
fluff (v)	ينتفخ			fluffy (adj)	منفوخ/طري

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Please, mix the ingredients well before baking the cake. To get the noun of "mix", add the suffix ".....".
 a) -tion b) -ity c) -ture d) -sure
- She spoke so everyone could understand her words clearly.
 a) rapidly b) hungrily c) quickly d) gently
- To describe something that feels soft and light, we add the suffix "....." to "fluff".
 a) -y b) -ure c) -ness d) -ly

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال تنزيل وطباعة نسخك من الإجابات الكاملة لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Reading Text

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Do you prefer homemade food or restaurant food? Why?
- 2 What do you like to put on a pizza?

 Read the following dialog. Guess when we use the expressions in bold. *SB page 49*

Boy Mom, can we make pizza at home today?

Mom Sure! First, we need **dough**⁽¹⁾, tomato sauce, and cheese.

Boy What should I do first?

Mom Mix the flour, salt, and yeast to make the dough, then **spread**⁽²⁾ it.

Boy Can I add the sauce and **toppings**⁽³⁾?

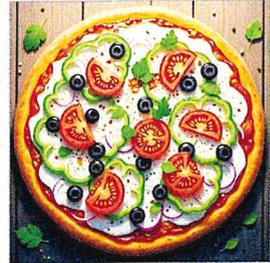
Mom Yes, spread a thin **layer**⁽⁴⁾ of sauce and add any toppings you like.

Boy Great! I'll put olives and cheese. What's next?

Mom We bake it for 10-15 minutes until the edges turn golden.

Boy I can't wait to taste it!

Mom **Homemade**⁽⁵⁾ pizza is always the best.



- | | |
|------------------|----------|
| (1) عجين | (2) ينشر |
| (3) إضافات | (4) طبقة |
| (5) صناعة منزلية | |

 Read the following dialog.

Basim Mom, can we make pancakes at home today?

Mom Of course, Basim! First, we need the **ingredients** for the **recipe**⁽¹⁾.

Basim Okay, what should I do now?

Mom Start by mixing the flour, milk, and eggs. Make sure you **mix well** so the mixture becomes **smooth**⁽²⁾.

Basim I think it looks good.

Mom After that, put some oil in a pan. Then **pour** into the pan slowly.

Basim When do I turn it over?

Mom You need to **flip it** after **1-2 minutes** on each side.

Basim Can I add toppings at the end?

Mom Yes, you can add chocolate, **honey**⁽³⁾, or **fresh fruit** if you like.

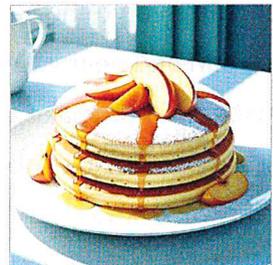
Basim I'll add strawberries—they're my favorite.

Mom Great choice!

Post-reading question:

- What ingredients do we need to make pancakes?

SB page 49
Suggested answers



- | | |
|--------------|----------|
| (1) وصفة طهي | (2) ناعم |
| (3) عسل | |

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever made a cheese pizza? What do you think of it?

 **Read the following text. "How to Make a Mixed Cheese Pizza".**

SB page 51

Making a mixed cheese pizza is easy and fun. First, prepare the dough and let it rise for thirty minutes. Next, roll it out in a round shape and spread **tomato sauce**⁽¹⁾ on top. Then, add mozzarella, cheddar, and feta cheese to make it creamy and rich. After that, put a few **spices**⁽²⁾ for extra **flavor**⁽³⁾. Finally, bake the pizza in a hot oven for fifteen minutes. Enjoy your **tasty**⁽⁴⁾ homemade pizza with your family!



- (1) صلصة طماطم (2) توابل
(3) مذاق/طعم (4) لذيذ

Post-reading question:

- Which three types of cheese are used on the pizza?

Pre-reading question:

- Who usually cooks at your home?

 **Read the following text.**

SB page 51

Making **scrambled eggs**⁽¹⁾ is easy and quick! First, you need 3 eggs, a little milk, **salt**⁽²⁾, and butter. Break the eggs into a bowl. Then, add two **table spoons** of milk and a little salt. Mix everything well with a fork. **Next**, put some **butter**⁽³⁾ in a pan and heat it. When the butter is hot, pour in the egg **mixture**. Don't make the heat too high! **Stir** the eggs gently as they cook. After about 2 minutes, the eggs will become **scrambled** and **fluffy**⁽⁴⁾. Finally, put them on a plate and enjoy! This is my grandmother's favorite. She always says, "Don't rush - good food takes time!"



- (1) بيض مقلى (2) ملح
(3) زبدة (4) منفوش/طرى

Post-reading question:

- What ingredients do you need to make scrambled eggs?

LESSONS 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The cake dough is a/an of flour, sugar, eggs, and milk.
a) mixture b) solution c) ingredient d) recipe
2. If something is not rough, it is to touch.
a) extra b) smooth c) mixed d) rapid
3. This cake is very sweet and delicious. To turn the adjective "sweet" into a noun we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -y c) -ure d) -ness
4. Before frying the pancake, you must it carefully with a fork.
a) flip b) mop c) mix d) peel
5. My mother uses fresh like strawberries and honey to make delicious pancakes.
a) yeast b) butter c) dough d) toppings
6. The cake was so light and that it melted in my mouth.
a) scrambled b) salty c) fluffy d) rich
7. After school, Ali had to his little brother's room.
a) sleep b) sweep c) stir d) heat
8. The hot chocolate was rich with flavors and
a) neatly b) creamy c) fluffy d) salty
9. Please, the soup so it doesn't burn.
a) heat b) stir c) cut d) freeze
10. The pizza had a thick of melted mozzarella and olives on top.
a) edge b) layer c) pan d) tray

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

oven – mix – bowl – fix – flour

Today, Dina wants to bake a delicious chocolate cake for her family. First, she puts some white (1)..... and sugar into a big blue (2)..... . She adds butter and two eggs to the dry food. Dina uses a wooden spoon to (3)..... everything well. The dough looks very smooth and creamy now. Finally, she puts the tray into the hot (4)..... to bake. It smells very good in the kitchen.



Talking about making a certain recipe

الحديث عن صنع وصفة معينة

←  online   

 What are you cooking today? ما الذى تطبخه اليوم؟

I am cooking a simple vegetable soup today. أنا أطبخ شوربة خضار بسيطة اليوم. 

 What are the main ingredients? ما المكونات الرئيسية؟

The main ingredients are carrots, potatoes, tomatoes, and a little salt. المكونات الرئيسية هى الجزر والبطاطس والطماطم وقليل من الملح. 

 Why do people like this dish? لماذا يحب الناس هذا الطبق؟

People like this dish because it is healthy. يحب الناس هذا الطبق لأنه صحى. 

 When did you learn to make it? متى تعلمت أن تعده؟

I learned to make it last year. تعلمت أن أعدّه العام الماضى. 

 Who taught you this recipe? من علمك هذه الوصفة؟

My mother taught me this recipe. أمى هى من علمتنى هذه الوصفة. 

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Hana wants to make chocolate cake.

Hana : Do you want to bake a cake today?

Adam : (1)..... That sounds like a very fun idea.

Hana : What (2)..... of cake do you like best?

Adam : I really love chocolate cake the most.

Hana : What are the main (3).....?

Adam : We need sugar and flour.

Hana : When can we start?

Adam : We can (4)..... right now.



How to write about making a delicious recipe

كيفية الكتابة عن عمل وصفة طهي لذيذة

1 Choose a Recipe:

اختر الوصفة:

- I choose to make a vegetable sandwich.
- It is easy and tasty.

2 Prepare the Ingredients:

حضر المكونات:

- I prepare bread, tomatoes, cucumbers, lettuce, cheese, and butter.
- I wash the vegetables.
- I cut the tomatoes, cucumbers, and lettuce.

3 Cooking Steps: خطوات الطبخ:

- I spread butter on the bread.
- I put the vegetables and cheese on the bread.
- I cover it with another slice of bread.

Making a delicious recipe

عمل وصفة طهي لذيذة

4 Taste and Serve:

التذوق والتقديم:

- I cut the sandwich in half.
- I put it on a plate to eat.
- I taste it and feel happy.

5 Enjoy Eating:

استمتع بتناول الطعام:

- I eat the sandwich with my family or friends.
- It is fresh, healthy, and delicious.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“How to make a delicious vegetable sandwich”

I want to make a delicious vegetable sandwich. First, I gather bread, butter, tomatoes, cucumbers, lettuce, and cheese. I wash the vegetables and cut them into small pieces. Then, I spread butter on the bread. I put the vegetables and cheese on the bread and cover it with another slice of bread. After that, I cut the sandwich in half. I taste it, and it is very tasty. Finally, I put it on a plate and eat it with my family. The sandwich is healthy, fresh, and delicious.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Don't rush; take your time to do it carefully. The opposite of "rush" is ".....".
 a) hurry up b) slow down c) spread d) rise
- The eggs were soft and
 a) grilled b) organized c) neat d) scrambled
- To make pizza, you need to the soft dough into a flat circle.
 a) boil b) flip c) roll out d) look for
- She baked a cake for her friend's birthday.
 a) scrambled b) peeled c) homemade d) fast-food

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bread – oven – dough – olives – toppings

We decided to make a big pizza for dinner last night. First, my mom made the soft (1)..... with her hands. She put red sauce and cheese on it. I helped her add the (2)..... we like best. We put green (3)..... and mushrooms on the cheese. Finally, we put the pizza inside the hot (4)..... to cook. The kitchen smelled wonderful while we waited for it

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- The bus wheels are big and round. (of)

- My grandfather has a farm. The farm is very far away. (grandfather's)

- The voice of the singer is full of emotion المشاعر. (singer's)

- The workers have their lunch at three o'clock. The lunch is always healthy. (workers')

4 Complete the following dialog:

Youssef asks Mai if she knows how to make pizza.

Youssef : Do you know how to make pizza?

Mai : (1).....

Youssef : (2)..... taught you?

Mai : My mom taught me.

Youssef : (3)..... did you learn it?

Mai : I learned it (4)..... month.

Youssef : What do we need for the dough?

Mai : We need (5)....., water, and some salt.

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"A recipe you like most"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

جواب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The window glass is broken and very sharp. (of)

.....

2. Hany has a watch. It is expensive and very shiny. (Hany's)

.....

3. The fur of the bear is thick and very warm. (bear's)

.....

4. The chair leg is broken. We need a carpenter. (of)

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
visitor	زائر	spread	يفرد
elegantly	بأناقة	bitterness	مرارة
beautify	يجمل	freeze	يجمد

2 Comprehension strategies:

How to guess the meaning of a word:

كيفية تخمين معنى كلمة:

هناك عدة نقاط يمكن أن تساعد في تخمين معنى الكلمة:

1. Try to understand what type of word it is. (.... حاول أن تفهم نوع الكلمة (اسم، فعل، صفة.))
2. Read the passage well. You may find synonyms, antonyms, or a definition. اقرأ القطعة جيداً. فمن الممكن أن تجد مترادفات، متضادات أو تعريفاً للكلمة.
3. Look for clues: Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help you understand its meaning. ابحث عن أدلة: أشر إلى الكلمات المحيطة بالكلمة غير المألوفة التي قد تساعد على فهم معناها.
4. Make a guess. حاول تخمين المعنى.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Last Friday, our family prepared a birthday party for my cousin, Omar. Everyone worked together to make the day special. In the morning, my mother and aunt made a plan and wrote a list of what we needed.

- The underlined word "special" means ".....".

- a) unusual b) usual c) famous d) strong

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- "Many Egyptians love eating falafel for breakfast".

- كثير من المصريين يحبون طلب الفلافل على الفطور.
 الكثير من المصريين يحبون تناول الفلافل على الإفطار.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- أولاً، قمنا بوضع البالونات والأضواء الملونة.

- First, we put up the balloons and colorful lights.
 First, we put the balloons and colored lights.

Vocabulary

chopped	مفروم/مقطع
sauce	صلصة
fold (ed)	يطوى
spoonful	ملء ملعقة
pickles	مخلل/طرش
tahini	طحينة
cucumbers	خيار
sesame	سمسم
spicy	حار/متبل
ingredients	مكونات/مقادير
banner	لافتة/راية
decoration	زينة/ديكور
celebration	احتفال
special	خاص/مميز
clean-up	تنظيف
unforgettable	لا يُنسى
occasion	مناسبة
curious	فضول
attached	مترقب/متعلق
mixture	خليط/مزيج
routine	روتين يومي
toppings	إضافات

Language

Possessives (s, s', of)

1. Possessive (s)

A) Singular nouns



e.g. • Mona's bag is on the chair.

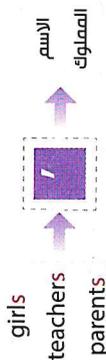
B) Irregular plural



e.g. • The children's voice was calm.

2. Possessive (s')

Plural nouns end with S



e.g. • The teachers' meeting ended.

3. Possessive using (of)



e.g. • The end of the story was surprising.

Skills

A. Speaking

Asking about favorite sandwich

1. What's your favorite sandwich?
- My favorite sandwich is a falafel sandwich.
2. What ingredients does it have?
- It has falafel, salad, and bread.
3. Who usually makes it?
- My mom usually makes it.
4. Why do you like it?
- I like it because it is tasty and healthy.

B. Writing

"How to make cheese pizza"

Making pizza is easy and fun. First, prepare the dough with flour, water, yeast, and a little salt. Mix the ingredients well and leave the dough to rest. Then, spread the dough on a tray. Add tomato sauce on top. Next, put cheese and your favorite toppings like chicken or vegetables. After that, put the pizza in a hot oven. Finally, bake it until the cheese melts and enjoy your tasty pizza.

A Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- After doing the laundry, please the clothes neatly and put them in the drawer.
 - mix
 - fold
 - wash
 - throw
- I like to eat my sandwich with some on the side.
 - cookies
 - noodles
 - pickles
 - pancakes
- Before you cook the vegetables, you should them into small pieces.
 - boil
 - peel
 - chop
 - mix
- Don't forget to do the; your dirty clothes are piling up!
 - sweeping
 - farming
 - mopping
 - laundry
- The washing machine began to rapidly to remove water from the clothes.
 - spin
 - walk
 - spread
 - orbit

B Language

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Have you met my wife?
 - brother's
 - brother of
 - brothers'
 - of brothers'
- I love the sweetness this jam.
 - off
 - of
 - with
 - in
- That is house.
 - Tom and Sarah of
 - of Tom and Sarah
 - Tom and Sarah's
 - Tom's and Sarah
- My friends are coming over.
 - sister
 - sister of
 - sister's
 - sisters of
- We visited the roof garden. It had an amazing view.
 - hotels'
 - hotel's
 - hotel of
 - hotels

C Writing

3 Write a paragraph (90–100 words) about how to make a chocolate cake:

- The main ingredients you need.
- The basic steps to prepare and bake it.
- How long it takes to bake.
- A tip to make it extra delicious.

A

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. Laila buys a falafel sandwich. (.....)
2. She pays ten pounds for the food. (.....)

B) Listen again and complete:

3. The man puts hot falafel and green inside.
4. Laila likes sauce on her food.
5. She eats quickly because she is late for

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The chocolate cake is very sweet. The opposite of "sweet" is ".....".
 a) tasty b) spoonful c) unsweet d) fried
2. She likes to crunch on apples because they are so fresh. When we add the suffix "....." to the verb "crunch," we get the adjective.
 a) -ed b) -ness c) -ful d) -y
3. My mother asked me to the cucumbers and tomatoes into small pieces.
 a) pour b) fold c) chop d) taste
4. For a tasty sandwich, she spread made from sesame seeds.
 a) vinegar b) tahini c) cheese d) oil

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

salty – fry – recipe – bake – sweet

My grandmother is the best cook in our whole family. She has a secret (1)..... for making the most amazing cookies. Sometimes she makes them (2)..... with lots of sugar and chocolate chips. Other times, she makes (3)..... crackers that we eat with cheese. On weekends, we help her (4)..... the bread in the hot oven. I love the smell of fresh food in her warm kitchen.



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The keys in the car belong to the driver. (driver's)

.....

2. The cries of the babies are loud in the room. (babies')

.....

3. The tree leaves are green and very fresh. (of)

.....

4. Nour has a room of her own. The room is pink and very tidy. (Nour's)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Omar is hungry and wants to eat a healthy snack.

Laila : Are you hungry for a healthy snack?

Omar : Yes, I (1)..... very hungry right now.

Laila : Let's (2)..... a big fruit salad together.

Omar : That is great. I love fruit.

Laila : (3)..... you wash the apples and grapes?

Omar : Sure, I will wash them in the sink.

Laila : (4)..... we need a big bowl?

Omar : Yes, please get the blue bowl out.

8 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favorite dish"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Review 3

LESSON 1



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the audio, then choose the correct answer:

- Last weekend, I visited the Grand Egyptian Museum, and it was a/an experience.
 - ordinary
 - unforgettable
 - boring
 - confusing
- The museum building is described as modern and
 - crowded
 - narrow
 - stunning
 - dark
- I saw treasures from tomb.
 - Ramses II's
 - Cleopatra's
 - King Tutankhamun's
 - Akhenaten's
- The interactive screens helped me the history.
 - forget
 - understand
 - ignore
 - rewrite

2 Complete the following dialog:

Aya and her friend Sara are talking about school rules.

Aya : Hey Sara, did you hear? Mr. Kamal gave our class a warning today.

Sara : No, I didn't. (1).....?

Aya : Some students keep breaking the school rules.

Sara : (2).....?

Aya : They always arrive late and don't keep the classroom clean.

Sara : (3)..... .

Aya : Plus, following the rules shows responsibility. It prepares us for real life.

Sara : Definitely. (4)..... .

3 Fill in the spaces with words from the box:

cairing – exchange – magnificent – artifact – celebrate

- The statue was a truly piece, attracting everyone's attention.
- We plan to our team's success this weekend.
- The museum displayed an ancient discovered in the desert.
- It was a friendly of ideas during the group discussion.
- Her attitude made everyone feel supported and valued.

4 Write a paragraph of (80 - 100) words about: "The importance of following rules in public places".

.....

.....

1 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Last Saturday, I had one of the funniest days ever with my friends. We went to the park to have a small picnic, but nothing went as planned. First, Ahmed slipped on the grass while carrying the juice, and it flew everywhere. We couldn't stop laughing. Then, we tried to take a group photo, but the camera kept falling over, so every picture looked silly. Later, we played volleyball, but the ball kept landing in the lake, and we had to rescue it each time. Even though everything went wrong, it made the day unforgettable. We spent the whole afternoon laughing, joking, and enjoying each other's company. It reminded me how fun and relaxing time with friends can be.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ahmed slipped on the grass while carrying the
 a) sandwiches b) juice c) camera d) ball
- The ball kept landing in the during the volleyball game.
 a) lake b) sand c) tree d) playground

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why did the group find the day so funny and unforgettable?

- What problems did they face while trying to take a group photo?

- How did the friends feel by the end of the day, and why?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- All students are encouraged to part in the school sports day activities.
 a) take b) look c) give d) get
- The school held a special to honor the students' achievements.
 a) celebration b) ceremony c) meeting d) festival
- The kids played football in the until it got dark.
 a) hallway b) backyard c) kitchen d) rooftop
- In our group project, everyone had different to make the work easier.
 a) goals b) rolls c) rules d) roles
- To apply for this job, you need the right skills and
 a) qualifications b) hobbies c) friends d) clothes
- You finish your homework tonight. It's due tomorrow.
 a) don't have to b) should c) must d) mustn't

7. You talk during the exam. It's against the rules.
 a) must b) should c) don't have to d) mustn't
8. You bring your own lunch, there's food at school.
 a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) should
9. That's Sara's bag, not
 a) me b) mine c) my d) I
10. Samy was annoyed because bag was stolen last week.
 a) he b) his c) him d) hers

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. You are not allowed to use your phone during class. (mustn't)

2. It is a good idea to eat healthy food every day. (should)

3. This bag belongs to my sister. (my sister's)

The Story

4 A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the eldest and middle brothers fail in the forest?

2. How did Dummling help the old man?

3. What reward did Dummling receive for his kindness?

B) Write True (T) or False (F):

4. Dummling was often laughed at but had a kind heart. (.....)
5. The middle son shared his food and drink with the old man. (.....)
6. Dummling found a goose with feathers made of pure gold. (.....)

5 Write a descriptive paragraph of about (80 - 100) words on:

"Your favorite teacher"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 10

HELPING OTHERS



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify the main ideas and details in charity and volunteer stories.
- Recognize values of kindness, teamwork, and responsibility in texts.

Listening

- Listen for specific details in short interviews about volunteer work.
- Identify who is speaking, where they are volunteering, and what they do.

Speaking

- Role-play charity and volunteer stories.

Language

- Use the future simple tense correctly.

Writing

- Write a short text about a volunteer activity.
- Write simple, clear sentences with correct grammar and spelling.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

attention (n)	اهتمام/رعاية	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى/ذو مغزى
flyer (n)	منشور/نشرة إعلانية	neighborhood (n)	حي/منطقة سكنية
kindness (n)	لطف/طيبة	warmly (adv)	بحرارة/بؤد

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

announcement (n)	إعلان/إشعار	fruit basket (n)	سلة فواكه
appreciate (d) (v)	يقدر/يشكر	greet (ed) (v)	يحيى/يُسلم
board game (n)	لعبة لوحية/طاولة	join (ed) (v)	ينضم/يلتحق بـ
card (n)	بطاقة/كرت	lonely (adj)	وحيد/منعزل
chat (ted) (v)	يحدث/يتحدث	notice (d) (n)	يلاحظ
classmate (n)	زميل صف	purpose (n)	غرض
community (n)	مجتمع	realize (d) (v)	يدرك
deeply (adv)	بعمق/بشدة	remind (ed) (v)	يُذكّر
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	simply (adv)	ببساطة
effort (n)	جهد/مجهود	touch (ed) (v)	يلمس/يتأثر
elderly (adj)	كبير سن/مسن	value (n)	قيمة
experience (d) (v)/(n)	يجرب/تجربة	visit (ed) (v)/(n)	يزور/زيارة
friendly (adj)	ودود	visiting day (n)	يوم الزيارة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

bring comfort/happiness to	يجلب راحة/سعادة إلى	happy with	سعيد بـ
create flyers	يعد منشورات إعلانية	knock on a door	يطرق باباً
deeply touched	متأثر بشدة (ممتن)	listen to stories	يستمع إلى القصص
feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	make a difference	يحدث فرقا/اختلافا
give time/attention/care	يمنح وقتاً/اهتماماً/عناية	on the chosen day	في اليوم المختار/المحدد

(n) = noun

(adj) = adjective

(prep) = preposition

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(v) = verb

(adv) = adverb

(conj) = conjunction

Read and complete with a word from the list:

with – greet – realize – meaningful

- 1 Eman didn't her keys fell under the table.
- 2 They are happy the match they won.
- 3 Helping others makes my day feel

VOCABULARY

Lesson 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

animal shelter (n)	مأوى/مركز رعاية حيوانات	rewarding (adj)	مكجز/مفيد
confidence (n)	ثقة	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي
interview (ed) (v/n)	يجري مقابلة/مقابلة	voluntary (adj)	تطوعي/اختياري
organize (d) (v)	ينظم/يرتب	volunteer (ed) (v/n)	يتطوع/متطوع
responsibility (n)	مسئولية	volunteering (n)	تطوع

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

action (n)	عمل/إجراء/تصرف/سلوك	local library (n)	مكتبة محلية
adult (n)	بالغ/راشد	paint (ed) (v/n)	يطلي/يدهن/طلاء/دهان
bench (n)	مقعد/دكة	pollution (n)	تلوث
cage (n)	قفص	proudly (adv)	بفخر/باعتراز
check (ed) (v)	يفحص/يتحقق من	prove (d) (v)	يثبت/يبهرن
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح/يفسر	reduce (d) (v)	يقلل/يخفض
improve (d) (v)	يُحسِّن	useless (adj)	قديم الفائدة/غير مفيد

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

build confidence	يبني الثقة	listen with smiles	يستمع بانتسامة
get excited	يتحمس/يشعر بالحماس	share experiences	يشارك التجارب

Read and complete with a word from the list:

teamwork – interview – share – voluntary

- 1 Travelers like to experiences about different cultures.
- 2 I'm sure is important when people work together on the same goal.
- 3 Helping at the animal shelter is a work, not obligatory. الزامى.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
mean	يعنى	meant	meant
think	يعتقد	thought	thought

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
deeply	بعمق/بشدة	strongly	بشدة	slightly	بشكل طفيف
elderly	كبير السن	aged	كبير السن	young	صغير السن
meaningful	ذو معنى/ذو مغزى	important	مهم	meaningless	بلا معنى
organize	ينظم/يرتب	arrange	يرتب	disorganize	يُفسد
reduce	يقلل/يخفف	decrease	يقلل	increase	يزيد
rewarding	مُجزٍ/مفيد	satisfying	مُرضٍ/مُشبع	unrewarding	غير مُجزٍ
useless	غير مفيد	worthless	عديم الفائدة	useful	مفيد
voluntary	تطوعي/اختياري	unpaid/free	غير مدفوع/مجاني	involuntary	إلزامي

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
announce (v)	يعلن	-ment	تحول إلى اسم	تحول إلى اسم	announcement (n)	إعلان/إشعار
differ (v)	يختلف	-ence	تحول إلى اسم	تحول إلى اسم	difference (n)	اختلاف
meaning (n)	معنى	-ful	تحول إلى صفة	تحول إلى صفة	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى/ذو مغزى
warm (adj)	دافئ	-ly	تحول إلى حال	تحول إلى حال	warmly (adv)	بحرارة/بودء
reward (v/n)	يكافئ/مكافئة	-ing	تحول إلى صفة	تحول إلى صفة	rewarding (adj)	مُجزٍ/مفيد
use (v)	يستخدم	-less	تحول إلى صفة	تحول إلى صفة	useless (adj)	عديم الفائدة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- She deeply cares about her family. The opposite of "deeply" is ".....".
 a) sharply b) slightly c) warmly d) slowly
- She received a reward for her honesty. To change the noun "reward" into an adjective, we add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ly b) -ness c) -ing d) -ment
- I use my phone to check emails. The suffix "....." can be added to "use" to mean "not helpful".
 a) -less b) -ed c) -ful d) -ous

Reading Text

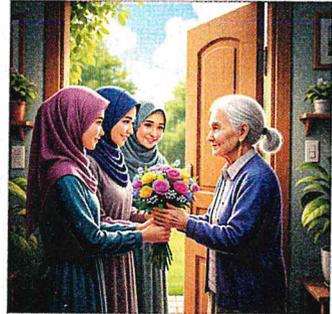
Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Have you ever helped someone in need? How?
 - 2 Why do you think kindness is important in our community?
-  Read the following passage. Did the elderly feel happy with the visits?

SB page 58

Last year, Amal, a fourteen-year-old student, wanted to do something meaningful for her **community**⁽¹⁾. She noticed that many **elderly**⁽²⁾ neighbors often felt lonely because their families lived far away. Amal thought carefully about how she could help. She discussed her idea with her parents and friends, and together they planned a "visiting day"⁽³⁾.



Amal created colorful flyers and shared them around the neighborhood, inviting people to join. On the chosen day, she and her **classmates**⁽⁴⁾ brought flowers, small **homemade**⁽⁵⁾ cards, and fruit baskets. They knocked on doors, greeted the elderly warmly, and spent time chatting, listening to stories, and even playing board games.

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| (1) مجتمع | (2) كبار السن/عجزة |
| (3) يوم الزيارة | (4) زملاء الفصل |
| (5) منزلي الصنع | (6) جيران |
| (7) يجرب/يصر بـ | (8) هدايا |

The **neighbors**⁽⁶⁾ were deeply touched. Some said it was the happiest day they had **experienced**⁽⁷⁾ in a long time.

Amal realized that kindness does not always mean giving money or **gifts**⁽⁸⁾. Sometimes, it simply means giving time, attention, and care. Her story reminds us that even a small effort can make a big difference and bring comfort and happiness to others.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Why did Amal want to do something for her community?
.....
- 2 What did Amal and her classmates bring to the elderly neighbors?
.....
- 3 How did the neighbors feel during the visiting day?
.....
- 4 What important lesson does Amal's story give us?
.....

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 Would you like to volunteer? Why or why not?
- 2 What kinds of voluntary work do you know?

Listen to three short volunteer interviews. What does volunteering teach us? **SB page 60**

Three Volunteer Interviews

Last week, three young volunteers shared their **experiences**⁽¹⁾.

Mona, 15, helps at the local library. "I organize books and read stories to children," she said. "It makes me happy when they listen with big smiles."

Omar, 16, spends weekends cleaning the park. "We collect **trash**⁽²⁾, plant flowers, and paint **benches**⁽³⁾. The park looks beautiful, and families enjoy it more," he explained **proudly**⁽⁴⁾.

Lina, 14, volunteers at an animal shelter. "I **feed**⁽⁵⁾ the dogs, walk them, and help keep their cages clean. They get excited when they see us," she said.

Each volunteer agreed that helping others, whether people, places, or animals, is rewarding. They believe **volunteering**⁽⁶⁾ teaches responsibility and teamwork, and it also builds **confidence**⁽⁷⁾. Their stories **prove**⁽⁸⁾ that small actions can improve a whole community.



SB

Post-listening questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Mona at the library.
 - a) paints benches
 - b) reads stories to children
 - c) feeds dogs
 - d) collects trash
- 2 Omar helps improve the park by and planting flowers.
 - a) reading books
 - b) cleaning cages
 - c) collecting trash
 - d) walking dogs
- 3 Lina volunteers
 - a) in a library
 - b) in a park
 - c) at an animal shelter
 - d) at a school
- 4 What do all the volunteers agree about?
 - a) Volunteering is useless
 - b) Volunteering is rewarding
 - c) Volunteering is only for adults
 - d) Volunteering is easy work

- (1) خبرات
- (2) قمامة
- (3) مقاعد
- (4) بفخر
- (5) يطعم
- (6) التطوع
- (7) ثقة
- (8) يثبت

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

flyers منشورات إعلانية/نشرات	small pieces of paper with information or announcements ⁽¹⁾ that are given to many people	إعلان/إشعار (1)
meaningful ذو معنى/مغزى	having a special or important purpose ⁽²⁾ ; full of value	غرض/هدف (2) منطقة (3)
neighborhood حي/منطقة سكنية	the area ⁽³⁾ or place where people live near each other	
warmly بحرارة/بود	in a kind and friendly way	

1 a + (عدد-year-old) + اسم

- Amal is a **fourteen-year-old** student.

2 spend + وقت + (v+ing)

- They greeted the elderly warmly and **spent** time **chatting**.

يقضى وقتا في ...

3 the + adjective

- **The elderly** كبار السن need special care and attention in hospitals.

للدلالة على جماعة بنفس الصفة

4 adverb ظرف حال + adjective صفة

- Dalia **speaks politely**.

- The neighbors were **deeply touched**.

للدلالة على درجة الصفة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hala smiled to us which was kind and friendly.

- a) warmly b) quickly c) hardly d) silently

2 My cousin is a twelve-.....-old boy who loves to play board games.

- a) year b) year's c) years d) years'

3 Every Friday, we spend time football at the park.

- a) play b) to play c) to playing d) playing

4 This restaurant is recommended.

- a) high b) higher c) highest d) highly

LESSON

7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The volunteers tried to comfort to the elderly by sharing stories.
 a) knock b) bring c) cry d) make
2. This job is very rewarding. The synonym of the word "rewarding" is
 a) satisfying b) used c) new d) boring
3. The teacher will announce the results of the exam next week. To form the noun from "announce," we add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ness b) -ly c) -ment d) -ful
4. Every Friday, we enjoy playing together after dinner inside my room.
 a) court games b) board games c) fruit basket d) visiting day
5. The school decided to to invite students to the meeting.
 a) create flyers b) make noise c) feel lonely d) give care
6. He made a/an to learn a new language before traveling abroad.
 a) mistake b) effort c) accident d) experience
7. Parents need to give to their children's needs and feelings.
 a) correction b) announcement
 c) attention d) cards
8. Many people realize how small acts of kindness can be.
 a) useless b) meaningful c) warmly d) elderly
9. Don't forget to on the door before you enter the classroom.
 a) cry b) knock c) look d) show
10. A/An was posted on the notice board لوحة الإعلانات about the exam schedule.
 a) card b) announcement c) basket d) story

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

board – flyer – neighborhood – neighbor – elderly

I live in a very nice place with my family. Yesterday, we decided to help the people in our (1) My sister created a colorful (2) to tell everyone about our plan. We wanted to visit the (3) people who live alone in big houses near us. We brought them some food and played fun (4) games together all afternoon. It was a day full of happiness for everyone who participated.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. means helping people without getting paid.
a) Crying b) Volunteering c) Playing d) Shopping
2. His old phone was useless as it didn't have internet. The opposite of "useless" is ".....".
a) easy b) expensive c) helpful d) useful
3. I listened with a when my grandmother was telling me stories about her childhood.
a) responsibility b) smile c) project d) cage
4. Children often excited when they hear they're going to the park.
a) believe b) prove c) explain d) get
5. My older brother is a/an now; he will be 21 next week.
a) adult b) teenager c) child d) elderly
6. The school will a sports day next week.
a) paint b) call c) think d) organize
7. When students work together on a project, they learn
a) teamwork b) pollution c) action d) volunteering
8. Cleaning the park was hard work, but everyone said it felt
a) useless b) unrewarding c) excited d) rewarding
9. The elderly need love and respect. The antonym of "elderly" is ".....".
a) deeply b) strongly c) aged d) young
10. My sister volunteers because she likes to her experiences.
a) read b) feed c) share d) get

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

volunteers – ability – responsibility – stories – organizes

Last week, a young volunteer shared her experience. Her name is Mayar. She likes reading. Every weekend, she (1)..... at the local library. She (2)..... the books. She also likes reading (3)..... to children. She said, "It makes me happy when they listen with big smiles." Volunteering teaches (4)..... and teamwork, and it also builds confidence.

The Future Simple Tense (**will/'ll/won't**)

زمن المستقبل البسيط

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

The Robot Helper

In the future, everyone (**will/is**) have a robot helper. My robot (**will/do**) clean my room for me. It (**will/is**) cook my dinner, too. I (**will/am**) play video games all day. My friends and I (**will/were**) have fun together. We (**won't/isn't**) have to do any homework! Life (**will/has**) be very easy.

Usage

الاستخدام

1. Predictions (without evidence):

تنبؤات (بدون دليل):

We use expressions like (think/ believe/ expect/ 'd like/ want/ maybe/ possible/ wish/hope).

e.g. I think it **will** rain tomorrow.

• We hope she **will** pass the test.

2. Decisions made now:

قرارات فورية (تقرر الآن/تتخذها في لحظتها):

e.g. I'm hungry. I **will** make a sandwich.

• The phone is ringing. I **will** answer it.

3. Promises/offers/requests:

وعد/عرض/طلب:

e.g. I **will** help you with your homework. (**offer**)

• **Will** you close the window, please? (**request**)

• I **will** visit you tomorrow when I'm free. (**promise**)

4. Future facts (we believe them):

حقائق عن المستقبل (نعتقد صحتها):

e.g. The sun **will** rise at 6:00 tomorrow.

• I **will** be 16 next year.

Form

التكوين

A) Affirmative: الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + **will ('ll)** + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. I **will** travel to London next year.

We **ll** win the match tonight.

B) Negative: النفي

Subject الفاعل + **won't (will not)** + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. Nada **won't** go to school tomorrow.

• They **will not** come to the party.

Question

السؤال

A) Yes/No question: السؤال بـ «هل»

Will + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. A: Will you help me with my homework?

B: Yes, I will. / No, I won't.

B) Wh- question: السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word أداة استفهام + will + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. A: Where will you go next Friday?

B: I will go to the club.

Time Expressions

تعبيرات زمنية

tomorrow غداً, next + (وقت) القادم (وقت), soon قريباً, later فيما بعد, in + (عدد) + (وقت) غصون (وقت),
in the future المستقبل, tonight هذه الليلة, may ربما, probably المحتمل, من المحتمل

I think أن أعتقد, in 2050

- I will call you tomorrow.
- They will travel to Alexandria next summer.
- We will live on the moon in 2050.
- I will see you soon.
- She will probably win.
- Alaa will watch a movie tonight.
- Cars will fly in the future.
- He will finish university in 3 years.
- I will do my homework later.
- I think it'll rain tomorrow.

Got it?

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1 Gehad promises to study hard and get high marks. (will)

- نبدأ بفاعل الجملة ثم (will) ثم مصدر الفعل الأساسى الذى وعدت به جهاد (study).

- Gehad will study hard and get high marks.

2 Ahmed wants to become an engineer. (I think)

- نبدأ بـ (I think) ثم فاعل الجملة (Ahmed) وبعده (will) وفعل الجملة المتوقع حدوثه (become an engineer).

- I think Ahmed will become an engineer.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. My father buy me a new bike for my birthday. SB
 a) has b) is c) was d) will
2. Don't worry, I send you the details by email. SB
 a) will b) am c) was d) did
3. I think it rain soon. SB
 a) am b) will c) was d) were
4. Who will cook dinner tonight? - I SB
 a) did b) am c) will d) have
5. They go to the beach tomorrow morning. SB
 a) do b) has c) were d) will

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- ▶ 1. Rania offers to clean her bedroom before she goes to school. (Rania will ...)

2. My brother wishes to travel to a nice city. (will)

3. I prefer to have a cup of coffee. (will)

4. I do not want to eat fish for lunch. (won't)

5. We promise to visit our grandparents in Cairo next weekend. (will)

6. Adam hopes to win the next football match. (I think Adam)

7. I expect my uncle to visit us tomorrow. (My uncle will ...)

8. I want my dad to buy me a bike. (I hope my dad)

9. Hoda cooks a delicious dinner for all the family. (tomorrow)

10. I'd like to study medicine in the future. (will)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I help you with your homework if you want.
a) am b) will c) was d) have
2. She forget to call her grandmother this evening.
a) won't b) isn't c) doesn't d) hasn't
3. We visit Alexandria next Friday.
a) have b) are c) did d) will
4. They will the football match on TV tonight.
a) watches b) watched c) watching d) watch
5. The teacher our projects tomorrow.
a) will check b) checking c) checked d) checks

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. We do not go to school on Fridays. (next Friday)
.....
2. Sarah wishes to read a new book about animals next week. (will)
.....
3. I'd prefer to spend the weekend in my village. (I will)
.....
4. My friend promises to give me a nice gift on Saturday. (will)
.....
5. Tarek watches funny cartoons on TV. (Next evening,)
.....
6. The dog wants to eat all the food in the bowl. (I think)
.....
7. Salma hopes to draw beautiful pictures of flowers. (Salma will)
.....
8. They do not expect to play outside when it rains. (won't)
.....
9. Ali would like to join the university. (Ali will)
.....
10. The boy promises not to make that mistake again. (won't)
.....

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



How to volunteer in your neighborhood

كيفية التطوع في الحي الخاص بك

← online

What does it mean to volunteer? ماذا يعنى التطوع؟

It means to help people without asking for money. يعنى أن تساعد الناس دون أن تطلب مالا.

Why is volunteering important? لماذا التطوع مهم؟

Volunteering makes our neighborhood clean. التطوع يجعل حينا نظيفاً.

How can I help my neighbors? كيف يمكنني مساعدة جيراني؟

You can listen to them, check in on them, and offer comfort when they need it. يمكنك الاستماع إليهم، والاطمئنان عليهم، وتقديم الدعم والراحة لهم عندما يحتاجون إليها.

What is one easy way to volunteer? ما هى الطريقة السهلة للتطوع؟

You can share books or toys with other children. يمكنك مشاركة الكتب أو الألعاب مع الأطفال الآخرين.

Who can I volunteer with? مع من يمكنني أن أتطوع؟

You can volunteer with your family or classmates. يمكنك أن تتطوع مع عائلتك أو زملائك فى الصف.

Can children volunteer too? هل يمكن للأطفال أن يتطوعوا أيضاً؟

Yes, children can volunteer by picking up trash. نعم، يمكن للأطفال أن يتطوعوا بجمع القمامة.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

- ▶ **Ali** wants **Salma** to help him clean their street.
- Ali** : Do you want to help our street?
- Salma** : Yes, I do. (1)..... can we do today?
- Ali** : We can (2)..... trash in the park.
- Salma** : That is a good idea. What do we need for that?
- Ali** : We need some big bags for the trash.
- Salma** : (3)..... can volunteer with us?
- Ali** : Our friends can volunteer with us.
- Salma** : Okay, I (4)..... call them right now.

SKILLS

Writing



How to write about an act of kindness

كيفية الكتابة عن فعل الصواب: الفعل الحسن

1 Who? (Characters): من؟ (الشخصيات)؟
- I saw a stranger غريب شخص. He was an old man.

2 What happened? ماذا حدث؟
- The old man was carrying many bags.
- He looked tired.

An act of kindness
عمل من أعمال اللطف

3 The kind act: الفعل الحسن اللطيف:
- I carried one bag, and I opened the door for him.

4 How did he/she feel? كيف شعرتم؟
- He was happy. He said, "You are kind."
- I felt good. My heart was happy.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"A Time Someone Was Kind"

Yesterday, I saw an old man at the supermarket. He had many heavy bags, and he looked very tired. He was trying to open the door. I decided to help him. I carried one of his bags and opened the door for him. He was very surprised and happy. He smiled and said, "Thank you! You are a kind person." I felt very good in my heart. This small act of kindness did not take much time, but it helped someone. I learned that helping others is very important.

تطبيق الأضواء



إجابات 100%: راجع إجاباتك من خلال تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com





نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. Salma found a hungry dog in the street. (.....)
2. Salma gave the cat warm milk. (.....)

B) Listen again and complete:

3. Salma took the cat
4. The cat plays in the
5. It is good to help

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The community center asked volunteers to flyers and hand them out.
a) knock b) create c) do d) study
2. She greeted her new neighbor and invited him to join their weekly game.
a) badly b) simply c) warmly d) hardly
3. The story has a deep meaning about friendship. To turn the noun "meaning" into an adjective, we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -ment c) -ful d) -ness
4. Teaching young children is rewarding. The opposite of "rewarding" is ".....".
a) voluntary b) useless c) unrewarding d) easy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

care – stories – classmate – share – chat

I love going to school to see my friends every day. I sat next to a new (1) in the front row this morning. We started to (2) about our favorite board games and funny books. He told me some great (3) about his old school in the big city. He felt good because I listened to him with (4) Now we are good friends and play together in the break.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Next Sunday, Youssef wants to ride his bike in the park. (will)
.....
2. There's a storm. The windows are open. (will shut)
.....
3. My mother promises to make a sweet cake for my birthday. (My mother will)
.....
4. The sun shines brightly in the blue sky. (tomorrow)
.....

5 Complete the following dialog:

Omar is asking Hana to plant flowers at the empty garden.

Omar : Hana, look at the empty garden here.

Hana : It looks sad, Omar. (1)..... does it need?

Omar : It needs flowers.

Hana : What can we do?

Omar : We can (2)..... some flowers.

Hana : (3)..... can help us?

Omar : My mom can help us.

Hana : The garden (4)..... look very pretty soon.

6 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"A kind act you did"

.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Marwan does not forget to do his English homework. (won't)
.....
2. Every summer, we go to the beach to swim. (Next ...)
.....
3. My uncle may visit us tonight. (Perhaps)
.....
4. Laila wants to wear a pretty dress to the party tonight. (will)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

alone (adj)	وحيد/منفرد	patience (n)	صبر
effort (n)	جهد/مجهود	powerful (adj)	قوى
huge (adj)	ضخم		

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

benefit (ed) (v)	يستفيد/يبتنعف	free (adj)	مجانى/حر
carry (y ied) (v)	يحمل	heart (n)	قلب
change (d) (v)	يغير/يبدل	learning (n)	تعلم
everyday life (n)	الحياة اليومية	person (n)	شخص
expensive (adj)	غال	shopping bag (n)	حقيبة تسوق
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح/يوضح	tiring (adj)	مُتعب/مرهق

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

bring happiness/hope	يجلب السعادة/الأمل	give attention	يعطى/يولى اهتماماً
come from	يأتى من	in fact	فى الواقع/الحقيقة
daily acts of kindness	أعمال كسنة يومية	part of	جزء من
do sports	يمارس/يؤدى الرياضة	show respect/care	يظهر احتراماً/اهتماماً
do things	يقوم بأشياء	smile at	يتسّم ل/فى
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	start with	يبدأ بـ
for example	على سبيل المثال/مثلاً		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

at – on – patience – alone – give

Checkpoint

- 1 Mariam finished the project without any help.
- 2 You must attention to the road while driving.
- 3 Ahmed smiled me when I said hello.
- 4 Learning a new language needs a lot of

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple		Past participle	
find	يجد	found		found	
bring	يجلب	brought		brought	

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
huge	ضخم	large	ضخم	tiny/small	ضئيل/صغير
patience	صبر	calmness	هدوء	impatience	نفاذ الصبر
powerful	قوى	strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
difficult	صعب	hard	صعب	easy	سهل
expensive	غالي	costly	مكلف	cheap	صغير

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix /Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
power (n)	قوة	-ful	تحول إلى صفة	powerful (adj)	قوى
slow (adj)	بطيء	-ly	تحول إلى حال	slowly (adv)	بطيء

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- She showed great patience during the test. The synonym of "patience" is ".....".
 a) cleverness b) calmness c) difficulty d) ability
- His new phone was very expensive. The antonym of "expensive" is ".....".
 a) cheap b) huge c) alone d) difficult
- Electricity provides power to our homes. We added the suffix "....." to the noun "power" to form an adjective.
 a) -ly b) -ness c) -ful d) -ion
- What a huge building! "....." is opposite in meaning to "huge".
 a) Quick b) Small c) Expensive d) Far

Reading Text

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 How can we help people every day?
- 2 Do you think helping others always costs money?

 **Read the passage, and guess the meaning of the words in bold.** SB Page 62

Helping others does not always mean doing something **huge** or giving a lot of money. **In fact**⁽¹⁾, helping can be very simple and part of everyday life. A small **action**⁽²⁾, if it comes from the heart, can bring **happiness**⁽³⁾ and **hope**⁽⁴⁾ to another person.



For example, you can smile at someone who **looks sad**⁽⁵⁾. A smile is free, but it can change someone's whole day. You can also carry shopping bags for an older person who finds it difficult to walk. That small **effort** shows **respect**⁽⁶⁾ and care. Another easy way to help is by **explaining**⁽⁷⁾ a lesson to a **classmate**⁽⁸⁾ who doesn't understand it. Your time and **patience** can make learning easier for them.

(1) في الحقيقة (2) تصرفاً/فعل

(3) السعادة (4) الأمل

(5) يبدو حزينا (6) الاحترام

(7) شرح (8) زميل الدراسة

(9) اهتمام (10) تصرفات/أفعال يومية

Helping can also mean listening. Sometimes a friend just needs someone to hear their problems. By giving **attention**⁽⁹⁾, you show that they are not **alone**. When many people do small things like this, the world slowly becomes a better and kinder place. Big projects are important, but **daily acts**⁽¹⁰⁾ of kindness are **powerful**, too. Everyone, even children, can help. You do not need to wait until you are older or richer. Start with simple actions today, and you will make a real difference.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 How can one help an old person?
.....
- 2 When should people start helping others?
.....
- 3 Why does the writer say that daily acts of kindness are powerful?
.....
- 4 Which small action from the text would you like to try? Why?
.....

Notes on Reading

Definitions	التعريفات		
huge	ضخم	very big	(1) قدرة
effort	مجهود	trying hard to do something	(2) أحداث
patience	الصبر	the ability ⁽¹⁾ to wait calmly	
alone	بفرده	without other people	
powerful	قوى	having control over people and events ⁽²⁾	

1 find it + adj. + (to + inf.)

يجد أن

- Some older persons **find** it **difficult to walk**.

2

عند التحدث عن اسم مفرد وغير محدد أنه مؤنث أم مذكر نشير إليه بضمير جمع

- Sometimes a **friend** just needs someone to hear **their** problems.

3 way to + inf. / way of + (n./ v+ing)

طريقة لـ

- Another easy **way to help** is by explaining homework to a classmate.
- She has a very polite **way of speaking** to her classmates.
- Farming is a traditional **way of life** in this village.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 "....." means the ability to wait calmly without getting angry.

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| a) Effort | b) Patience |
| c) Power | d) Smile |

2 The baby boy finds it difficult stairs.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| a) climb | b) climbing |
| c) to climbing | d) to climb |

3 It's an easy way and get high marks.

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| a) to study | b) study |
| c) studying | d) to studying |

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We walked for too long in the desert. It was really so, I needed to rest.
a) expensive b) powerful c) tiring d) useful
2. Ali, be polite and show some while waiting in line.
a) heart b) patience c) body d) benefit
3. The old museum had a/an statue تمثال that amazed every visitor.
a) cheap b) difficult c) free d) huge
4. You can a lot from reading books every evening.
a) carry b) benefit c) wait d) go
5. She made a great to finish the science project before the deadline.
a) kindness b) effort c) time d) ability
6. Please, your answer clearly so everyone in class can understand.
a) explain b) change c) find d) do
7. She bought an expensive dress for the wedding. The word "....." is an antonym to "expensive".
a) cheap b) boring c) costly d) hard
8. Many students like to sports to stay healthy.
a) do b) make c) watch d) sleep
9. We always respect to our teachers by listening carefully in class.
a) show b) let c) do d) made
10. Learning a new language is not easy. It is very
a) expensive b) difficult c) huge d) beloved

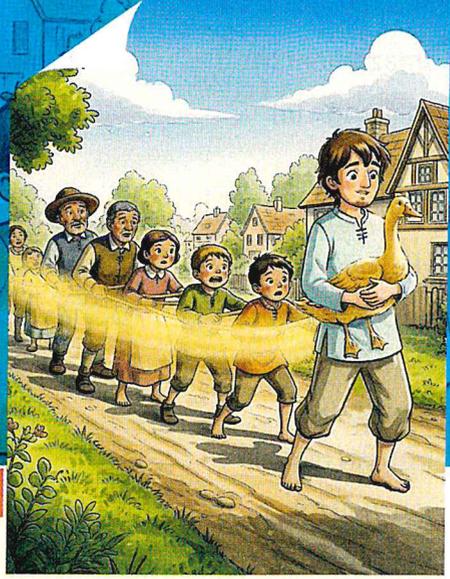
2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

carry – huge – smell – smile – difficult

My friend Adam likes to help people in his everyday life. One day, he saw an old woman outside the market with a (1) box. It looked very heavy and (2) to move alone. Adam ran to help her (3) it to her blue car. The woman was very happy with his help. She gave him a big (4) to say thank you. Kindness can make everyone feel much better.

4

Chapter Four: The Long Procession



Chapter (4) in points:

الفصل الرابع في نقاط

- 1 Dummling walked down the road with the golden goose under his arm.
سار دوملينج في الطريق والإوزة الذهبية تحت إبطه.
- 2 The three boys were stuck to the goose and had to follow him, crying and struggling.
كان الأولاد الثلاثة عالقين بالإوزة وكان عليهم تتبعه، يبكون ويحاولون التحرر.
- 3 A schoolmaster laughed and tried to pull them free, but he got stuck too.
ضحك مُعلِّم المدرسة وحاول تحريرهم، لكنه علق هو الآخر.
- 4 Then a farmer, a soldier, and more people touched the group and became stuck as well.
ثم لمسهم مزارع وجندي وأناس آخرون، فعلقوا جميعاً.
- 5 A long line of people followed Dummling through the village, unable to let go.
تكوّن صف طويل من الناس يتبع دوملينج عبر القرية، غير قادرين على الفك.
- 6 Everyone laughed and stared in amazement at the strange parade.
ضحك الجميع وحققوا بدهشة في هذا الموكب الغريب.
- 7 Children clapped and villagers pointed in wonder.
صفّ الأطفال وأشار القرويون بتعجب.
- 8 Dummling, once called foolish, now walked proudly at the front.
دوملينج، الذي كان يُدعى أحمق من قبل، يسير الآن بفخر في المقدمة.
- 9 He did not know it yet, but he was walking toward the royal palace.
لم يكن يعلم بعد، لكنه كان يسير نحو القصر الملكي.
- 10 An unusual challenge was waiting for him there.
كان هناك تحدٍّ غريب ينتظره.

المفردات الرئيسية Key Vocabulary

amazement (n)	دهشة/ذهول	procession (n)	موكب/مسيرة
challenge (n)	تحديّ/مهمة صعبة	struggle (d) (v)	يكافح/يناضل
parade (n)	موكب	wonder (adj)	إعجاب/سخرية

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

choice (n)	اختيار/خيار	royal (adj)	ملكي
clap (ped) (v)	يصفق/يضرب كفاً بكف	schoolmaster (n)	مدير المدرسة
farmer (n)	مزارع/فلاح	sight (n)	منظر/مشهد
foolish (adj)	أحمق/ساذج	soldier (n)	جندي
instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	unable (adj)	غير قادر
journey (n)	رحلة	unusual (adj)	غير عادي
mainly (adv)	أساساً/بشكل رئيسي	villagers (n)	قرويون/سكان القرية
through (adv)	عبر/من خلال	wherever (adv)	في أي مكان
palace (n)	قصر	toward (adv)	نحو/باتجاه

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر Language Expressions & Prepositions

along the way	على طول الطريق	lead to	يؤدي إلى
as well	أيضاً	let go of	يترك/يتخلى عن
at the front of	في مقدمة/في واجهة	point in wonder	يشير بهشة/يلمح بإعجاب
from the beginning of	منذ بداية	pull them free	يشدهم ليحررهم
join in	يشارك/في/ينضم إلى	take place	يحدث

التعريفات Definitions

struggling	يكافح/يناضل	trying very hard to do something that is difficult	(1) دهشة
amazement	دهشة/ذهول	a strong feeling of great surprise ⁽¹⁾	(2) احتفال
parade	موكب	a group of people moving together in a celebration ⁽²⁾	(3) موقف
challenge	تحديّ/مهمة صعبة	a difficult situation ⁽³⁾ that tests someone's strength ⁽⁴⁾ , or courage ⁽⁵⁾	(4) قوة
let go	يترك/يتخلى عن	allow someone to go free	(5) شجاعة
wonder	إعجاب/سخرية	want to know something	

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What happened when the eldest son touched the goose?
- 2 Why do you think people sometimes join in without thinking first?

 Read the following text. In pairs, guess the meaning of the words in bold.

SB page 64

Chapter Four: The Long Procession

Dummling walked down the road with the **goose**⁽¹⁾ under his arm. Behind him, the three boys were **stuck**⁽²⁾, **struggling** and crying, but they had no **choice**⁽³⁾ but to follow.

Why were the three boys crying and struggling as they followed Dummling?

Along the way, a **schoolmaster**⁽⁴⁾ laughed at the **sight**⁽⁵⁾ and tried to pull them free. Instead, he stuck fast as well. Soon, a farmer joined in, and then a **soldier**⁽⁶⁾, and even more people. A lot of people followed Dummling through the village, all **unable**⁽⁷⁾ to let go of the **magical**⁽⁸⁾ goose.

What happened when the schoolmaster, farmer, and soldier touched the group?

The sight caused **laughter**⁽⁹⁾ and **amazement** wherever they went. Children clapped, and villagers pointed in **wonder**.

How did the villagers and children react when they saw the parade?

Dummling, who had once been seen **foolish**⁽¹⁰⁾, now walked **proudly**⁽¹¹⁾ at the front of this strange **parade**. He did not know it yet, but his journey was leading him to the **royal**⁽¹²⁾ palace, where an unusual **challenge** was waiting for him.

Where was Dummling going with the parade?

- (1) اوزة
- (2) عالق
- (3) اختيار
- (4) مدير المدرسة
- (5) منظر
- (6) جندي
- (7) غير قادر
- (8) سحري
- (9) ضحك
- (10) احمق
- (11) باعتزاز
- (12) ملكي

Story Time Q & A

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. Why were the boys following Dummling?

لماذا تتبع الأولاد دوملينج؟

- They were stuck to the magical goose and could not let go.

2. What happened to the schoolmaster when he tried to help?

ماذا حدث لمدير المدرسة عندما حاول المساعدة؟

- He became stuck as well.

3. Who else got stuck after the schoolmaster?

من علق بعد مدير المدرسة؟

- A farmer, a soldier, and more people.

4. How did the villagers react to the parade?

كيف تصرف القرويون تجاه الموكب؟

- They laughed, pointed in wonder, and showed amazement.

5. How did Dummling feel as he led the parade?

كيف كان شعور دوملينج وهو يقود الموكب؟

- He walked proudly at the front.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think more people kept getting stuck?

لماذا تعتقد أن المزيد من الناس علقوا؟

- Because they were curious فضوليين or didn't believe the magic was real.

2. How did Dummling's role change throughout the chapter?

كيف تغير دور دوملينج خلال الفصل؟

- He went from being seen as foolish to leading a parade.

3. What does this strange parade show about kindness and magic?

ماذا يُظهر هذا الموكب الغريب عن اللطف والسحر؟

- It shows that goodness can turn into something wonderful that everyone notices.

4. Why do you think the story is leading Dummling to the royal palace?

لماذا تعتقد أن القصة تقود دوملينج إلى القصر الملكي؟

- Because his kindness deserves a great reward, and the king might need his help.

5. What might the "unusual challenge" at the royal palace represent in Dummling's journey?

ما الذي قد يمثله «التحدى غير المألوف» في القصر الملكي في رحلة دوملينج؟

- It represents the next test of his courage, wisdom, or cleverness.

Chapter 4 Exercises



SB page 65

1 Match the words from column (A) with their meanings from column (B):

A

1. struggling
2. amazement
3. parade
4. challenge
5. let go
6. wonder

B

- a) a group of people moving together in a celebration
- b) a difficult situation that tests someone's strength, or courage
- c) trying very hard to do something that is difficult
- d) a strong feeling of great surprise
- e) want to know something
- f) allow someone to go free

2 Answer the following questions:

1. Put these events in the correct order:
 - a) The farmer joined the group.
 - b) The schoolmaster tried to pull the boys free.
 - c) Dummling walked proudly through the village.
2. How has Dummling changed from the beginning of the story?
3. Why did more people begin to follow Dummling?
4. How do you think Dummling felt when everyone started laughing and clapping?
5. Where did this part of the story mainly take place?

3 Read and put True (T) or False (F):

1. The boys were happy to follow Dummling. (.....)
2. The schoolmaster was able to free the boys. (.....)
3. More and more people became stuck to the goose. (.....)
4. The villagers were angry when they saw Dummling's parade. (.....)
5. Dummling was walking toward the royal palace. (.....)

4 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

1. What does this chapter teach us about people who laugh at others before knowing the whole story?
.....

2. If you were one of the villagers, what would you have thought or done when you saw the parade?
.....

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Dummling walked proudly at the front of a strange
 - a) parade
 - b) choice
 - c) party
 - d) race
2. The schoolmaster tried to help, but he got to the group.
 - a) lost
 - b) tired
 - c) stuck
 - d) angry
3. More people joined the line: a farmer, a, and even more people.
 - a) king
 - b) a cook
 - c) soldier
 - d) a wolf
4. The sight caused laughter and
 - a) anger
 - b) hatred
 - c) amazement
 - d) pride
5. Dummling was walking toward the without knowing it.
 - a) forest
 - b) huge market
 - c) royal palace
 - d) school

2 Write True (T) or False (F):

- ▶ 1. Only the three boys were stuck—no one else joined them. (.....)
2. Children clapped when they saw the parade. (.....)
3. Dummling felt shy and walked at the back of the group. (.....)
4. The people who touched the group could easily let go. (.....)
5. An unusual challenge was waiting for Dummling at the royal palace. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- ▶ 1. Who got stuck after the three boys?
.....
2. How did the villagers react to the long line of stuck people?
.....
3. Why did Dummling walk proudly in this chapter?
.....
4. Where was the parade heading?
.....
5. What does this chapter show about how people see Dummling now?
.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Interactive games and online videos are helpful tools for new skills.
 a) losing b) giving c) feeling d) learning
- Difficult tasks become easier with patience. The antonym of "patience" is ".....".
 a) expensive b) impatience c) useless d) slowly
- The lion is a powerful animal in the jungle. The suffix "-ful", added to "power", changes it into a/an
 a) verb b) adjective c) adverb d) preposition
- "....." means trying hard to do something.
 a) Huge b) Patience c) Powerful d) Effort

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Helping others is a very wonderful thing to do every single day. You do not need to do big things to be helpful. Small acts of kindness can make a huge difference in the world. You can help your parents by cleaning your room or washing the dishes. At school, you can share your pencils with a friend who needs one. If you see someone who is sad, a simple smile can make them feel happy again. Helping makes the people around you feel good, and it makes you feel proud too. Everyone should try to help one person today. It is easy to show love and kindness to everyone.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the text is about
 a) cleaning rooms b) being sad c) helping others d) washing dishes
- The underlined pronoun "them" refers to
 a) parents b) someone sad c) pencils d) dishes

B) Answer the following questions:

3. How can you help your friends at school?

.....

4. How does helping others make you feel according to the text?

.....

5. Do small acts of kindness only benefit تفيد the person receiving the help? Why or why not?

.....

The Story

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The magic only worked on children—not adults. (.....)
2. Dummling knew he was going to the royal palace. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where was Dummling's journey leading him?
.....
4. Why do you think more people kept touching the group?
.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I wish to find a better job. (will)
.....
2. I expect the team to win the cup next month. (The team will)
.....
3. The floor is wet. I need to clean it now. (will clean)
.....
4. Dad promises to take me to the park. (Dad will)
.....

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"A kind act you did one day"

.....
.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Do you mind helping me with this heavy box? (Will you)
.....
2. My dad refuses to buy a new video game. (won't)
.....
3. They don't believe our team will lose the game. (won't)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	donate (d) (v)	يتبرع
matter (ed) (v)	يهم/ يحدث فرقاً	valued (adj)	مقدَّر/محترم

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

environment (n)	بيئة	plus (conj)	بالإضافة إلى
excellent (adj)	ممتاز/رائع	skill (n)	مهارة
fantastic (adj)	رائع/مدهش	treat (ed) (v)	يعامل/يعالج
chance (n)	فرصة	invite (d)(v)	يدعو
parents (n)	والدان	worker (n)	عامل

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at least	على الأقل	That sounds fun.	يبدو هذا ممتعاً.
clean up	ينظف/يرتب	give a chance	يمنح/يعطي فرصة
cheer up	يبتهج/يُبهج	proud of	فخور بـ
do voluntary work	يعمل عملاً تطوعياً	That's true.	هذا صحيح.
That's a great point.	هذه نقطة عظيمة/مهمة.	Me too!	وأنا كذلك!

Read and complete with a word from the list:

donate – of – with – excellent

- The food was and delicious. I liked it so much.
- People money to help the poor.
- My teacher is proud my good work.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
show	يُظهر	showed	shown
feel	يشعر	felt	felt

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
donate	يتبرع	give	يعطي	receive/take	يتسلم/ يأخذ
excellent	ممتاز/ رائع	brilliant	ممتاز/ رائع	terrible	سيئ جداً
fantastic	رائع/ مذهش	incredible	رائع/ لا يصدق	ordinary	عادي
valued	مقدَّر/ محترم	appreciated	مقدَّر	ignored	مهمل

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix /Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
value (v/n)	يقيم/ قيمة	-d	تحول إلى صفة		valued (adj)	مقدَّر/ محترم
work (v/n)	يعمل/ عمل	-er	تحول إلى اسم فاعل		worker (n)	عامل

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We can work extra hours today. By adding the suffix ".....", we form the noun of "work".
 - ly
 - ion
 - ness
 - er
- The teacher said my project was excellent. The synonym of "excellent" is ".....".
 - terrible
 - brilliant
 - ordinary
 - weak
- He wanted to donate some books to the library. The opposite of "donate" is ".....".
 - give
 - teach
 - take
 - learn

Reading Text

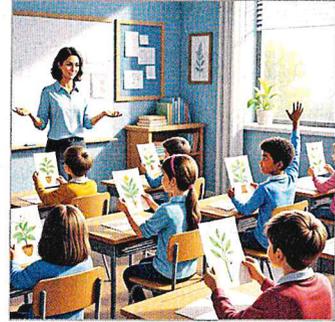
Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 How do you help your little brother/ sister at home?
- 2 How can you help your classmates at school?

 Read the following dialog. Guess the meanings of the expressions in bold. *SB page 66*

Teacher Good morning, everyone! Can I ask you two questions to start? First, why do you think it's important to help others?



Maher I think it makes people happy and shows we **care**⁽¹⁾.

Teacher That's a great point! Second question: How can we help others?

Mariam We can help by giving food to people who are hungry.

Omar I like helping by **explaining**⁽²⁾ lessons for younger students in school.

Laila I sometimes help by cleaning up my **neighborhood**⁽³⁾ or school.

Teacher Wow, those are all excellent ideas! Can anyone think of something else?

Mariam We can help by planting trees to protect the environment.

Omar Or by helping our parents at home, like cooking or cleaning.

Teacher Fantastic! I'm really proud of all your ideas. Remember, helping doesn't have to be big — even small acts **matter**⁽⁴⁾.

Laila Yes! I'll try to do **at least**⁽⁵⁾ one kind thing every day.

- | | |
|---------------|---------|
| (1) يهتم | (2) شرح |
| (3) الحى | (4) يهم |
| (5) على الأقل | |

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why did Maher say it's important to help other people?
.....
- 2 Name three different ways the children talked about helping others.
.....
- 3 How did Omar try to help his friends?
.....

Pre-reading question:

- How do you spend your summer holiday?

 Read the following text.

SB Page 68

My Plans to Help My Community Next Summer

Next summer holiday, I will spend my time usefully. I will help my **neighbors**⁽¹⁾ and the local community. I will clean the park and plant trees with other **volunteers**⁽²⁾. I will make flyers to invite people to join our activities. I hope my small effort will make a huge difference. Doing this work will bring **happiness**⁽³⁾ to me and others. I will treat everyone with kindness and help everyone feel **valued**⁽⁴⁾.

**Post-reading question:**

- What activities will the writer do to help the community next summer holiday?

.....

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| (1) جيران | (2) متطوعون |
| (3) سعادة | (4) مفخر/محترم |
| (5) يطعم الحيوانات | (6) عمال |
| (7) اختلاف | |

Pre-reading question:

- Do you prefer living in a city or in a village? Why?

 Read the following text:

SB Page 69

Bassem's Plans to Help His Grandfather

Bassem lives in a city, but next weekend he will visit his grandfather's farm in a village near Benha called Marsafa. He will help his grandfather plant vegetables and **feed the animals**⁽⁵⁾. He knows it will need **patience** and **effort**, but he is ready. Bassem will clean the farm and prepare food for the **workers**⁽⁶⁾. He also plans to **donate** old clothes and food to a local **charity**. He wants to make a **huge difference**⁽⁷⁾ in the village and show his **kindness** to everyone.

Post-reading question:

- How does Bassem want to help the village?

LESSONS 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Teachers help students understand the value of hard work. We add the suffix "....." to "value" to form an adjective.
 a) -ive b) -d c) -ity d) -er
2. The students at my school collected money for a local to help the poor.
 a) charity b) school c) market d) park
3. I helped clean the park near our house with my friends.
 a) up b) down c) at d) for
4. It's important to old clothes to people in need.
 a) donate b) focus c) teach d) receive
5. Ahmed felt proud of his sister when she won the race. We use "proud" to express ".....".
 a) shame b) sadness c) happiness d) worry
6. Try to and think about something positive إيجابي.
 a) proud of b) cheer up c) look down d) give up
7. Rania thinks her English teacher, Ms. Hanaa, is fantastic. The antonym of "fantastic" is ".....".
 a) brilliant b) incredible c) ordinary d) excellent
8. It really to me that my friends are kind.
 a) ignores b) teaches c) matters d) takes
9. My cousin voluntary work at the animal shelter once a week.
 a) plays b) does c) plays d) gives
10. Laila said the food at the new restaurant was excellent, not
 a) cheap b) incredible c) fantastic d) terrible

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fantastic – terrible – explaining – parents – skill

My friend Adam is a very helpful student at our school. He really likes to help other children who need extra support in class. Every week, he likes helping by (1)..... math lessons for the younger kids. He has a great (2)..... at explaining difficult numbers very clearly to them. The teachers think he is doing a (3)..... job helping everyone learn. His (4)..... are very happy to see him work so hard.



Helping in your local community المساعدة في مجتمعك المحلي



online



Why do you think it's important to help others? لماذا تعتقد أن مساعدة الآخرين مهمة؟

I think it makes people happy and shows we care.

أعتقد أنها تجعل الناس سعداء وتُظهر أننا نهتم بهم.



How can we help others?

كيف يمكننا مساعدة الآخرين؟

We can help by giving food to people. يمكننا المساعدة عن طريق إعطاء الطعام للناس.



Why do you think voluntary work is important? لماذا تعتقد أن العمل التطوعي مهم؟

Because it helps the community.

لأنه يساعد المجتمع.



Do you think everyone should try to volunteer?

هل تعتقد أنه يجب على الجميع محاولة التطوع؟

Yes, everyone should try to volunteer.

نعم، يجب على الجميع محاولة التطوع.



Important expressions:

• Hi!	مرحبًا	• Exactly! Plus, ...	بالضبط! بالإضافة إلى ذلك.
• That's true.	هذا صحيح	• Me too!	أنا أيضًا
• Exactly!	بالضبط	• That's a great point!	هذه نقطة رائعة
• I agree.	أنا أتفق	• I think ...	أعتقد أن/أظن أن
• That sounds fun/great.	هذا يبدو ممتعًا/رائعًا	• I'm really proud of all your ideas.	أنا فخور حقًا بكل أفكاركم
• Fantastic!	رائع! /ممتاز		

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ Adam suggests cleaning up their big park.

Adam: Hi Laila, do you want to help today?

Laila : Hi Adam! Yes, I want to clean our big park.

Adam: (1)..... do we need to pick up the trash there?

Laila : We need bags to put the old trash in.

Adam: (2)..... do you think it is important to help?

Laila : Because it keeps our nice town clean and safe.

Adam: I (3)..... . Everyone likes to play in a clean park.

Laila : (4).....! Let us go to the park right now.



How to write about voluntary work to help the community

كيفية الكتابة عن العمل التطوعي لمساعدة المجتمع

1 What is voluntary work?

ما هو العمل التطوعي؟

- Work you do for free.
- You help people or places.
- It makes the community better.

2 Where can you volunteer?

أين يمكنك التطوع؟

- At a **park**: pick up trash, plant trees
- At an **animal shelter**: help with cats and dogs
- At a **food bank**: give food to people in need

Voluntary work

العمل التطوعي

3 What can you do?

ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل؟

- Clean (parks, beaches)
- Help (animals, children, elderly people)
- Donate (food, clothes, books)
- Teach (simple English, computer skills)

4 Why is it good?

لماذا هو جيد؟

- You learn new skills.
- You meet new friends.
- You feel happy and useful.
- You make your town cleaner and kinder.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“Voluntary work to help the community”

Voluntary work is when you help your community for free. You can do many things. For example, you can clean your local park or help at an animal shelter. You can also give food at a food bank or read books to children at the library. This work is very important. It makes your town a better place to live. Volunteering also helps you. You can learn new things and make new friends. Most importantly, it feels very good to help other people. Everyone should try to volunteer.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The teacher knows how to students with respect.
a) invite b) shout c) give d) treat
- The charity asked people to money or clothes to help families in need.
a) take b) receive c) donate d) ignore
- My father is a skilled worker who builds beautiful wooden furniture.
The suffix “-er” in “worker” shows that it is a/an
a) adjective b) verb c) adverb d) noun
- Samira was proud her son when he finished his first marathon.
a) at b) in c) for d) of

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

environment – treat – proud – voluntary – clean up

Last weekend, our class decided to do something good for our town. We wanted to make the local park look beautiful again for everyone. We agreed to do (1)..... work on Saturday morning. It is important to help the (2)..... be healthy and green. We worked together to (3)..... all the old trash on the grass. Our teacher was very (4)..... of us because we made a big difference.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- She doesn't want to share her notebook with anyone. (won't)
.....
- She hopes the present reaches her friend tomorrow. (The present)
.....
- My pencil broke. I need to get a new one. (I will)
.....
- The sun sets at 6:15 p.m. (tomorrow evening)
.....

4 Complete the following dialog:

Karim wants to help his community.

Farah : Are you busy this morning, Karim?

Karim : No, I am (1)..... to help people.

Farah : Why do you think voluntary work is (2).....?

Karim : Because it helps the community and makes us happy.

Farah : (3)..... can we help others in our street today?

Karim : We can help by giving food to hungry people.

Farah : I'm really (4)..... of all your ideas.

Karim : Thank you. Let us go share the food.

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"How you help your community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Could you send me the homework notes later? (Will you)

.....

2. Rania says she is ready to help her mother with the dishes. (Rania will)

.....

3. My hands are dirty. I need to wash them now. (will wash)

.....

4. My brother promises to fix my broken toy after school. (will)

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!



1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
pointless	لا جدوى منه	trivial	تافه
profit	يربح	affordable	بسعر معقول
endurance	تحمل/جلد	sociable	اجتماعى

2 Comprehension strategies:

• How to answer this question:

كيفية الإجابة عن هذا السؤال:

What does the underlined pronoun “.....” refer to?

أولاً: عليك أن تعرف إلى ماذا تشير الضمائر:

Pronouns are words that refer to the closest specific noun right before them.

الضمائر عادة تشير لأقرب اسم يسبقها.

ثانياً: عليك قراءة الجملة التى تسبق الضمير جيداً وتحديد الاسم الذى تشير إليه.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Last year, Amal, a fourteen-year-old student, wanted to do something meaningful for her community. She noticed that many elderly neighbors often felt lonely because their families lived far away.

• What does the underlined pronoun “her” refer to?

.....

.....

.....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Helping others does not always mean giving a lot of money.

- مساعدة الآخرين لا تعنى دائماً إعطاء الكثير من المال.
- مساعدة الآخرين لا تعنى أبداً إعطاء الكثير من المال.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- تذكرنا هذه القصة أن المجهود الصغير يمكن أن يحدث فرقاً كبيراً.

- This story reminds us that a small effort can make a big difference.
- This story tells us that a small effort can't make a big difference.

Vocabulary

flyer	منشور / نشرة
neighborhood	حي / منطقة سكنية
responsibility	مستولية
valued	مقدر / محترم
meaningful	ذو معنى / ذو مغزى
announcement	إعلان / إشعار
interview (ed)	يجري مقابلة / مقابلة
voluntary	تطوعاً / اختياري
confidence	ثقة
volunteer (ed)	يتطوع / متطوع
rewarding	مجز / مفيد
volunteering	تطوع
animal shelter	مأوى / مركز رعاية حيوانات
teamwork	عمل جماعي
patience	صبر
effort	جهد / مجهود
powerful	قوي
amazement	دهشة / دهول
parade	موكب / مسيرة
challenge	تحدي / مهمة صعبة
struggle (d)	يكافح / يناضل
charity	جمعية خيرية
donate (d)	يتبرع
chance	فرصة
attention	اهتمام / رعاية

Language

The Future Simple Tense (will/'ll/won't)

Affirmative:

Subject الفاعل + will ('ll) + inf. المصدر

e.g. I will travel to London next year.

Negative:

Subject الفاعل + won't (will not) + inf. المصدر

e.g. Nada won't go to school tomorrow.

Yes/No question:

Will + sub. الفاعل + inf. المصدر ... ?

e.g. A: Will you help me with my homework?

B: Yes, I will. B: No, I won't.

Wh- question:

Q. Word + will + sub. الفاعل + inf. المصدر ... ?

e.g. A: Where will you go next Friday?

B: I will go to the club.

Time Expressions:

tomorrow, next + (وقت), soon, later,
in + (وقت) + (عدد) + in the future, tonight,
maybe, probably, I think, in 2050.

Skills

A. Speaking

How to volunteer in your neighborhood

- What does it mean to volunteer?
It means to help people without asking for money.
- Why is volunteering important?
Volunteering makes our neighborhood clean.
- How can I help my neighbors?
You can help by cleaning the street.
- What is one easy way to volunteer?
You can share books or toys with other children.
- Who can I volunteer with?
You can volunteer with your family or classmates.
- Can children volunteer too?
Yes, children can volunteer by picking up trash.

B. Writing

Daily acts of kindness

Every day, we can do small acts of kindness. At home, I help my mother, wash the dishes, and clean my room. At school, I am kind to my friends. I share my pens, help them in class, and smile at everyone. In the community, I try to help people by giving food to poor people and picking up litter in the park. I also show respect to old people. These simple actions make others feel happy, and they make my day better too.

A Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My father gave me a look that showed he really cared.
a) huge b) meaningful c) small d) tall
2. He smiled at the child.
a) lonely b) powerfully c) warmly d) difficult
3. The elephant is a animal.
a) huge b) short c) thin d) small
4. I sat on the beach watching the sunset.
a) powerful b) valued c) alone d) warm
5. We need to make a great to reach our goals.
a) smile b) value c) power d) effort

B Language

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They their grandparents next weekend.
a) visit b) will visit c) have visited d) visited
2. She a doctor when she grows up.
a) will be b) is c) was d) be
3. We to the beach if the weather is nice.
a) go b) went c) will go d) going
4. I think it tomorrow.
a) rains b) rained c) raining d) will rain
5. I a gift for my friend's next birthday party.
a) will buy b) buy c) buys d) bought

C Writing

3 Write a paragraph of (80-100) words about how to make our neighbors happy.

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

- Ahmed helped an old man carry bags. (.....)
- The woman gave Ahmed a sweet apple. (.....)

B) Listen again and complete:

- Ahmed saw the woman carrying heavy
- He carried the bags to her
- Kindness makes everyone feel

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The volunteers tried to up the beach by collecting all the trash.
a) reduce b) clean c) paint d) organize
- We must use less water to help protect the environment. Adding the suffix "....." to the word "use" gives us the adjective meaning "not useful".
a) -less b) -ed c) -ing d) -ful
- My grandfather is and needs help walking to the park every morning.
a) elderly b) friendly c) huge d) difficult
- Our neighbors are so friendly; they always smile and say hello. The antonym of "friendly" is ".....".
a) lonely b) useful c) unfriendly d) voluntary

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pollution – plant – produce – environment – reduce

Our school wants to make the world a much better place. We learned that we must protect the (1)..... from bad things around us. We want to stop (2)..... in our city and make the air clean. The teacher told us to (3)..... the trash we throw away every day. We will also (4)..... some new trees in the garden tomorrow. We are very proud of our hard work.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Manal wore her best dress on her graduation حفل التخرج. It was a very important
 a) occasion b) position c) mistake d) reason
2. Mom will chop the onions into small pieces for the salad. To form the adjective of "chop", the letter "p" is doubled and the suffix "....." is added.
 a) -ive b) -ed c) -ly d) -ness
3. When making a salad, it's common to vegetables with oil and vinegar.
 a) bend b) fold c) mix d) pour
4. Birthdays are special celebrations in most families. The antonym of "special" is ".....".
 a) unique b) surprised c) common d) astonished
5. Ahmed always eats healthy food breakfast.
 a) with b) to c) on d) for
6. The chips crunch when you bite into them. We add the suffix "....." to "crunch" to form an adjective.
 a) -y b) -full c) -ty d) -ness
7. This website shows step-by-step for cooking meals.
 a) recipes b) flyers c) spoons d) roofs
8. The students were asked to a list of all the ingredients they need.
 a) serve b) make c) smell d) end
9. Please, fold the paper in half. The synonym of "fold" is ".....".
 a) bend b) pour c) stir d) rush
10. The juice was too sweet, so I asked for something less sugary. The antonym of "sweet" is ".....".
 a) salty b) cold c) spicy d) tasty
11. We need to prepare the celebration by decorating the room and baking the cake.
 a) at b) on c) to d) for
12. The guest was surprised by the unforgettable party we organized. The word "unforgettable" can be replaced with ".....".
 a) forgettable b) memorable c) unsurprised d) astonished
13. helped clean the neighborhood and received warm thanks.
 a) Babies b) Purposes c) Mothers d) Volunteers

14. Donating books to the library has a kind meaning. The adjective of "meaning" is formed by adding ".....".

- a) -ity b) -ed c) -ful d) -able

15. She stirred the mixture slowly until it became smooth and creamy. The word "smooth" is the opposite of ".....".

- a) gently b) rapidly c) rough d) neatly

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I promise not to cry when I fall down. (won't)

.....

2. I'm thirsty. I want to drink some water. (I will)

.....

3. The lights are not working. I must fix them. (I will)

.....

4. Could you please turn down the music? (Will you)

.....

5. The old and small boat belongs to the fisherman. (fisherman's)

.....

6. The teeth of the tiger are sharp and very white. (tiger's)

.....

7. The dress price is high and very expensive. (of)

.....

8. The wing of the bird is injured and cannot fly. (bird's)

.....

9. The clock hands are moving very slowly now. (of)

.....

10. The doctor has a coat. It is white and long. (doctor's)

.....

11. The car of the thieves was found. (thieves')

.....

12. The world map is on the classroom wall. (of)

.....

13. Salma has a bag. It is heavy and full of books. (Salma's)

.....

14. The toys that belong to children are wonderful. (children's)

.....

15. The boys have toys. They are in the box. (boys')

.....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

recipe – spoon – salty – ingredients – sweet

My mom and I decided to make a special cake today. First, we read the (1)..... carefully to know exactly what to do. Then, we put all the fresh (2)..... like flour and sugar on the kitchen table. Mom used a big (3)..... to mix everything slowly in a blue bowl. Finally, we put it in the oven to bake. The cake tasted very (4)..... and we were so happy.

B)

clean – neighborhood – volunteer – angry – elderly

We live in a very nice place with many friendly people. Last week, I decided to help my (1)..... look much better. I chose to (2)..... with my friends on the weekend. We helped (3)..... the streets and pick up trash. We also visited the (4)..... people who live alone nearby. Everyone was happy because we showed them kindness and care.

4 Complete the following dialogs:

A) Jana offers chocolate ice cream to Adam.

Jana : Do you want some chocolate ice cream today?

Adam : Yes please, ice cream is my (1)..... dessert.

Jana : (2)..... do you like ice cream so much?

Adam : Because it tastes delicious when the weather is very hot.

Jana : What do you like to put on top?

Adam : I like to (3)..... nuts and chocolate sauce on it.

Jana : (4)..... do you usually eat ice cream, Adam?

Adam : I eat it in the summer after playing outside.

B) Youssef and Hana are talking about the Eid feast.

Youssef : Hi Hana, are you ready for the Eid feast?

Hana : Yes, I (1)..... . My family is very excited.

Youssef : (2)..... will you do on the first day?

Hana : We will visit my grandparents for lunch.

Youssef : (3)..... you eat delicious food at their house?

Hana : Yes, grandma will cook our favorite meal which is pasta.

Youssef : Do you get new clothes for the family occasion?

Hana : Yes, I (4)..... a new blue dress and white shoes.

6

مقرر شهر
إبريل



MODULE

Unit **11** The Natural World

Unit **12** I Will Be Responsible

Module 6 Question Bank

Unit 11

THE NATURAL WORLD



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify the main ideas and key details in short texts about natural wonders and wildlife.

Listening

Listen for general meaning and specific details in short reports and weather forecasts.

Speaking

- Describe natural places, weather conditions, and animals using simple sentences.
- Share personal opinions and short stories.

Language

Comparatives and Superlatives

Writing

Write a short descriptive paragraph about nature and weather.

Use adjectives and linking words to organize ideas clearly and logically.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary	المفردات الرئيسية		
flat (adj)	مسطح	species (n)	أنواع/أصناف
landmarks (n)	معالم	towering (adj)	شاهق/عال
rise (v)	يرتفع/يعلو	Victoria Falls (n)	شلالات فيكتوريا
mist (n)	ضباب خفيف/شجيرة	wonders (n)	عجائب

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening		مفردات على القراءة والاستماع	
beauty (n)	جمال	locate (d) (v)	يحدد موقع/يقع (جغرافيا)
creation (n)	خلق/إبداع	nature (n)	طبيعة
drop (n)	قطرة	planet (n)	كوكب
endless (adj)	لا نهائي/بلا نهاية	power (n)	قوة/طاقة
escape (d) (v)	يهرب/يفر	roar (n)	هدير/زئير
explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	sights (n)	مناظر/مشاهد
fog (n)	ضباب	steam (n)	بخار
forest (n)	غابة	straight (adj)	مستقيم
height (n)	ارتفاع	thunder (ed) (v/n)	ترعد السماء/الرعد
importance (n)	أهمية	thunderous (adj)	مدو/صاخب/راعد
light (adj)	خفيف	waterfall (n)	شلال

Language Expressions & Prepositions		التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر	
crash down	تهوى/تسقط لأسفل	known for	معروف ب-/مشهور بـ
create mist	يكون ضبابا	lie between	تقع بين (جغرافيا)
hear about	يسمع عن/يعلم بشأن		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

created – thunder – endless – mist

- The desert looked; I could not see the far end.
- The cold air mist on the window this morning.
- The shook the windows and doors.

Checkpoint

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition | لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

climate (n)	المناخ	nature (n)	الطبيعة
hydrated (adj)	رطب	weather (n)	جو/طقس
Adjectives for weather صفات الطقس			
clear	صافٍ	cooler	أكثر برودة
cloudy	غائم	hot	حار
cold	بارد	icy	جليدي/مثلج
cool	مائل للبرودة	rainy	مطير/ماطر
		snowy	مثلج (تساقط فيه الثلوج)
		wet	مبلل/رطب
		windy	عاصف
		sunny	مشمس

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

advise (d) (v)	ينصح	giant (adj)	ضخم/عملاق
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب	meanwhile (adv)	في هذه الأثناء
change (d) (v/n)	يتغير/تغير	snow (n)	ثلج
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق/يتحقق	umbrella (n)	مظلة
expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع	wisely (adv)	بحكمة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

across the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	kind of	نوع من
at just 6°C	عند 6 درجات مئوية فقط	respect the environment	يحترم البيئة
avoid the midday sun	يتجنب شمس منتصف النهار	stay hydrated	يبقى رطباً
carry an umbrella	يحمل مظلة/شمسية	with a high of 34°C	بدرجة حرارة عظمى 34 درجة
check the weather	يتحقق من الطقس		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

rainy – umbrella – wisely – climate

- 1 It was raining heavily, so Amira took an
- 2 Hana likes walking outside on days.
- 3 Noura chooses what to eat

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
rise يرتفع	rose	risen

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
endless	لا نهائى/بلا نهاية	limitless	لا حدود له	limited	محدود
icy	مثلج	snowy	مثلج	warm	دافئ
outdoors	فى الخارج	outside	فى الخارج	indoors	فى الداخل
towering	شاهق/عال	very high	عال جداً	low	منخفض
wet	مبتل	moist	رطب/مبتل قليلاً	dry	جاف

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
tower (n)	برج	-ing	تحول إلى صفة	تحويل إلى صفة	towering (adj)	شاهق/عال
amaze (v)	يذهل	-ous	تعطى العكس	تعطى العكس	amazing (adj)	رائع/مذهل
thunder (n)	رعد	-ion	تحول إلى اسم	تحول إلى اسم	thunderous (adj)	صاخب/راعد
end (n)	نهاية	-y	تحول إلى صفة	تحول إلى صفة	endless (adj)	لا نهائى/بلا نهاية
create (v)	يخلق	-er	تحول إلى اسم	تحول إلى اسم	creation (n)	خُلق/إبداع
rain (n)	مطر				rainy (adj)	مطير/ماطر
run (v)	يجرى				runner (n)	عداء

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Artists use different colors to create beautiful paintings. We delete "e" and add the suffix "....." to the verb "create" to form the noun.
 a) -y b) -er c) -ion d) -less
- The building looked towering next to the small houses. "Towering" gives the same meaning as
 a) low b) ordinary c) tiny d) very high
- Heavy rain flooded the streets. The suffix "....." turns the noun "rain" into an adjective.
 a) -ing b) -ous c) -er d) -y

Reading Text

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What is the most beautiful place in nature you have ever seen or heard about? Describe it.
- 2 Why do you think people travel to see natural wonders like waterfalls, forests, or deserts?

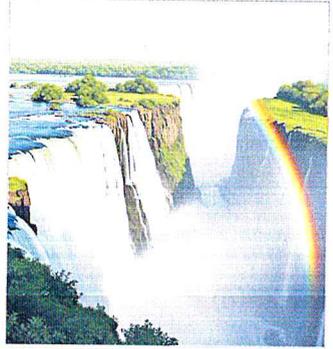


Read the following text. What do natural wonders remind us?

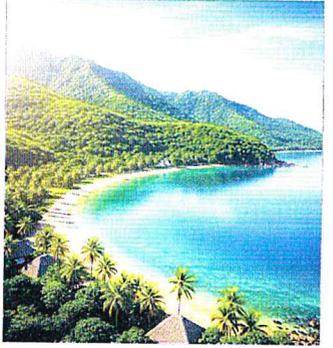
SB page 72

The wonders⁽¹⁾ of Nature

From towering waterfalls⁽²⁾ to endless deserts⁽³⁾, the natural world is full of amazing sights⁽⁴⁾. One of the most famous waterfalls is Victoria Falls, located between Zambia and Zimbabwe. Its powerful waters crash down with a thunderous roar⁽⁵⁾, creating mist⁽⁶⁾ that rises like smoke. It is often called "The Smoke That Thunders."



Another wonder is Table Mountain which is one of the most famous⁽⁷⁾ natural landmarks in South Africa. It rises above the city of Cape Town and is known for its flat top, which looks like a giant⁽⁸⁾ table — that's how it got its name.



Finally, Lake Malawi (also called Lake Nyasa) is one of Africa's largest and most beautiful lakes. It lies⁽⁹⁾ between three countries: Malawi, Mozambique, and Tanzania. It's known for having the world's largest variety⁽¹⁰⁾ of fresh water fish species.

These natural wonders remind us to care for our planet⁽¹¹⁾. They show the beauty and power of creation, and the importance of protecting it for future generations⁽¹²⁾.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Name three places from the passage that show nature's beauty and power.
- 2 In your opinion, what makes these natural places special?
- 3 If you could explore one of the natural wonders mentioned, which would you choose and what would you hope to experience there?

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------|
| (1) عجائب | (2) شلالات |
| (3) صحارى | (4) مناظر طبيعية |
| (5) هدير المياه الصاخب | (6) ضباب |
| (7) مشهورة | (8) عملاق |
| (9) تقع | (10) مجموعة |
| (11) كوكب | (12) أجيال |

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What kind of weather do you enjoy most—sunny, rainy, or snowy? Why?
- 2 How does weather affect your daily life or the environment around you?

Listen to the following text. What is it about?

SB page 74



CAIRO, EGYPT



LONDON, UK



MOSCOW, RUSSIA

Good morning, **my dear friends!**⁽¹⁾ Let's check the weather in three cities. In Cairo, it's sunny and very hot today with a high of 34°C. People are advised to stay hydrated and avoid the **midday**⁽²⁾ sun. In London, it's **cooler**⁽³⁾ and rainy, with a high of 18°C. The streets are wet, so carry an umbrella. Meanwhile, Moscow is cold at just 6°C, and snow is expected later. Roads may be icy, so travel **carefully**⁽⁴⁾. These different climates show how nature changes across the world. Whether hot, wet, or cold, we must respect the environment and **prepare**⁽⁵⁾ **wisely**⁽⁶⁾ for all **kinds**⁽⁷⁾ of weather.

(1) تصدقاني الأصدقاء

(2) الظهيرة

(3) أكثر برودة

(4) بعناية

(5) يستعد

(6) بحكمة

(7) أنواع

Post-listening questions:

SB

- 1 What is the weather like in Cairo today?
.....
- 2 Which city has the most extreme weather and why?
.....
- 3 What kind of weather do you prefer and how does it affect your daily life?
.....

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

flat	مسطح	straight ⁽¹⁾ with no height ⁽²⁾	(1) مستقيم
landmark	علامة	famous and easily seen building or place	
mist	ضباب خفيف/شبورة	light fog ⁽³⁾ or tiny drops ⁽⁴⁾ of water in the air	(2) ارتفاع
rise	يعلو	move from a place to a higher one	(3) ضباب
species	أنواع/أصناف	a group of animals or plants	
towering	شاهق/عالي	very tall or high	(4) قطرات

1 one of + اسم جمع + فعل مفرد واحد من
 • One of the most famous waterfalls is Victoria Falls.

2 is called يسمى/يُدعى
 • It is often called "The Smoke That Thunders."

3 Places أماكن

Zambia	زامبيا	Zimbabwe	زيمبابوي	Ghana	غانا	Victoria Falls
Kenya	كينيا	Tanzania	تنزانيا	Nigeria	نيجيريا	شلالات فيكتوريا

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** One of the tallest mountains in the world in the Himalayas.
 a) are b) is
 c) were d) have
- 2** The Great Pyramid "The House of the Pharaoh" by ancient historians.
 a) call b) is called
 c) called d) are called
- 3** A is a group of animals or plants.
 a) flat b) landmark
 c) species d) mist

Checkpoint

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The mountains surrounded the small village.
 - a) towering b) length c) misty d) golden
2. We took many photos of the beautiful along the river.
 - a) sights b) smells c) sounds d) stories
3. Noura is afraid of thunder. To get the adjective of "thunder", add the suffix ".....".
 - a) -ous b) -ing c) -er d) -ion
4. This national park is known its beautiful landscapes and rare animals.
 - a) for b) to c) about d) with
5. Scientists explore remote places to locate new that can live in difficult conditions.
 - a) spaces b) species c) roots d) sights
6. Early in the morning, thick covered the valley, making it hard to see the road.
 - a) nature b) mist c) wave d) thunder
7. The waterfall creates a roar when crashing down. It's too loud.
 - a) golden b) raining c) towering d) thunderous
8. Spending time outdoors helps people feel calm and relaxed. The antonym of "outdoors" is
 - a) outside b) indoors c) over d) full
9. The shelf suddenly down, breaking everything on it.
 - a) crashed b) stood c) opened d) created
10. Mist from the river at sunset.
 - a) falls b) swims c) rises d) dries

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rises – towering – species – power – spaces

Nature is full of amazing landmarks that attract people from all over the world. In many remote areas, (1)..... waterfalls crash down into deep valleys. Every morning, the sun (2)..... to light forests, oceans, and mountains. These places are home to many unique (3)..... of plants and animals. Together, they remind us of the beauty and (4)..... of the natural world.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Doctors always patients to drink water and rest when they feel sick.
a) expect b) present c) advise d) affect
2. The word "....." means to act or decide in a sensible عقلاني way.
a) outdoors b) wisely c) meanwhile d) daily
3. If you're walking outside on a hot day, you should always the midday sun.
a) carry b) check c) avoid d) respect
4. In the desert, animals can live in temperatures with a of 34°C.
a) close b) high c) far d) near
5. Scientists study the to understand long-term تغييرات changes in temperature.
a) animals b) plants c) ice d) climate
6. It's important to drink water often in summer, so you can hydrated all day.
a) stay b) carry c) check d) avoid
7. To the environment, we should not litter, but recycle and save electricity.
a) check b) carry c) respect d) avoid
8. If the weather report says it's just 9°C, you have to wear a heavy jacket today.
a) with b) across c) at d) on
9. The run was happy because he won the race. We can correct the underlined word by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ing b) -ner c) -y d) -ly
10. It was raining in Cairo, and, my cousin was enjoying sunshine in Aswan.
a) across b) meanwhile c) while d) when

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

temperature – hot – outdoors – cold – hydrated

Today is going to be a very difficult day for everyone in the city. The sun is very strong and the weather is extremely (1) outside right now. The (2) will go up very high later today. You should not play (3) with your friends in the park. Please, stay inside your cool house and drink lots of cold water to stay (4)

Comparatives & Superlatives المقارنة والتفضيل

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

Tamer has three pets. The rabbit is (*faster/the fastest*) than the turtle. The cat is the (*smaller/smallest*) of the three animals. Tamer thinks the rabbit is the (*cuter/cutest*), but his sister thinks the cat is the (*more lively/most lively*). One day, they race the pets. The rabbit is the (*faster/fastest*), and the turtle is the (*slower/slowest*). Tamer says it was the (*more exciting/most exciting*) race ever!

Short adjectives

• **Short adjectives** are adjectives with one syllable.

الصفات القصيرة هي صفات مكونة من مقطع واحد.

- e.g. **big** (1 syllable)
small (1 syllable)
fast (1 syllable)
short (1 syllable)

Long adjectives

• **Long adjectives** are adjectives with two or more syllables.

الصفات الطويلة هي صفات مكونة من مقطعين أو أكثر.

- e.g. **fa-mous** (2 syllables)
beau-ti-ful (3 syllables)
ex-pen-sive (3 syllables)

1 Comparatives

المقارنة (بين اثنين)

• **Comparative adjectives** are used to compare two people, animals, or things.

تُستخدم **صفات المقارنة** لمقارنة شخصين، أو حيوانين، أو شيئين.

Type	Short Adjectives	الصفات القصيرة	Long Adjectives	الصفات الطويلة
✓ Rule	short adj. + er + than + (طرف ثان)		more (أكثر) / less (أقل) + long adj. + than + (طرف ثان)	
✓ Examples	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A car is faster <u>than</u> a bicycle. • Summer is hotter <u>than</u> spring. • This book is heavier <u>than</u> that one. 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gold is more expensive <u>than</u> silver. • This movie is less interesting <u>than</u> that one. • Your idea is more useful <u>than</u> my idea. 	

Superlative adjectives are used to compare three or more things. They show the highest or lowest degree of something.

تُستخدم صفات التفضيل لمقارنة ثلاثة أشياء أو أكثر. وهي تُشير إلى أعلى أو أدنى درجة لشيء ما.

Type Short Adjectives الصفات القصيرة Long Adjectives الصفات الطويلة



Rule

the + short adj. + est

the most (الأكثر) / the least (الأقل)
+ long adj.

Examples

• Ali is **the tallest** in his class.• This story is **the most exciting** of all.• Today is **the hottest** day this week.• It is **the most beautiful** design on the wall.

لا حظ أن

١- الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضعاف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة **er** أو **est**.

• big → **bigger/ the biggest**• hot → **hotter/ the hottest**

٢- الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (y): نحول **y** إلى **i** ثم نضيف **er** أو **est**.

• happy → **happier/ the happiest**• busy → **busier/ the busiest**

صفات غير منتظمة:

3. Irregular adjectives:

الصفة	Comparative المقارنة	Superlative التفضيل
good جيد	better أفضل/ أحسن	the best الأفضل/ الأحسن
bad سيء	worse أسوأ	the worst الأسوأ
far بعيد	farther/ further أبعد	the farthest/ the furthest الأبعد
little قليل	less أقل	the least الأقل
many/ much كثير	more أكثر	the most الأكثر

e.g. • This book is **better than** the other one.

• Manal is **the least** tired of all.



Got it?

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1 My brother is 18. I am 15.

(older)

- نبدأ بالفاعل (My brother) ثم فعل الجملة ثم نكتب صفة المقارنة (older than) ثم الطرف الثاني من المقارنة.

- My brother is older than me.

2 Every student got lower marks than Yara.

(the highest)

- نبدأ بالفاعل (Yara) ثم فعل الجملة ونكتب صفة التفضيل (the highest).

- Yara scored the highest marks of all students.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ahmed is than his brother at playing football.
 a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) the fastest
2. The blue whale is the animal in the world.
 a) a big b) bigger c) biggest d) most big
3. Yesterday, the weather outside was than it is today.
 a) cold b) colder c) coldest d) the coldest
4. Sarah is the girl in our class at school today.
 a) more smart b) smarter c) smartest d) a smart
5. The novel is interesting than the new movie.
 a) many b) more c) most d) the most

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. No one is taller than Ali. (tallest) **SB**

2. Hady is fatter than every student in class. (the) **SB**

3. Tamer is the fastest runner in the race. (No runner) **SB**

4. I am 16 years old. Noha is 17. (younger) **SB**

5. Dalia is clever, but Faten is cleverer. (than) **SB**

6. My phone costs LE 3000. Yours costs LE 2500. (more expensive)

7. No day was hotter than yesterday. (the hottest)

8. This bag weighs more than that suitcase. (heavier)

9. Laila finished her homework before anyone else. (the quickest)

10. Sami's car uses more fuel than my car. (My car)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The sun is than the moon.
a) bright b) brighter c) brightest d) more bright
- My new red car is than my old blue bike.
a) expensive b) more expensive c) most expensive d) the expensive
- Tarek is than his sister when he does his homework.
a) careful b) carefully c) more careful d) most careful
- Hana was the when she passed her exams.
a) happy b) happiest c) happier d) most happier
- Last week, the test was than the one today.
a) hard b) harder c) hardest d) more hard

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- No cake at the party tasted more delicious than yours. (the most delicious)
.....
- The chair is not comfortable like the sofa. (more comfortable)
.....
- No animal in the zoo is bigger than the elephant. (the biggest)
.....
- Omar speaks better English than his sister. (worse)
.....
- No book is more interesting than "Harry Potter". (the most interesting)
.....
- My room is smaller than my sister's. (bigger)
.....
- The red dress costs less than the blue one. (cheaper)
.....
- No one ran faster than Karim. (the fastest)
.....
- Mount Sinai is higher than all other mountains in Egypt. (the highest)
.....
- Hoda's room is messy while Yara's room is clean. (messier)
.....

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك. 

C

SKILLS

Speaking



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Talking about the weather الحديث عن الطقس



online



What is the weather like today?

ما حالة الطقس اليوم؟

Today, the weather is sunny.

اليوم الطقس مشمس.



What kind of weather do you prefer/enjoy most?

ما نوع الطقس الذي تفضله أو تستمتع به أكثر؟

I prefer cool weather because it feels comfortable.

أنا أفضل الطقس البارد لأنه مريح.



How does weather affect your daily life?

كيف يؤثر الطقس على حياتك اليومية؟

I wear different clothes and plan my activities.

أرتدي ملابس مختلفة وأخطط أنشطتي.



How does weather affect the environment around you?

كيف يؤثر الطقس على البيئة من حولك؟

Rain helps plants grow, and heat makes the ground dry.

المطر يساعد النباتات على النمو، والحرارة تجعل الأرض جافة.



Which city has the most extreme weather and why?

أي مدينة لديها طقس شديد أكثر؟ ولماذا؟

I think Aswan has very extreme weather because it is very hot.

أعتقد أن أسوان لديها طقس شديد لأنها حارة جدًا.



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ Aida is asking about the weather today.

Aida : How is the weather outside today?

Omar : It is (1)..... today.

Aida : (2)..... you like this kind of weather?

Omar : Yes, I do, I love to play in the sun.

Aida : Will you go to the park later?

Omar : (3)....., I will go this afternoon.

Aida : (4)..... I come with you to play?

Omar : Yes, of course. You can come.



How to write about natural wonders

كيف تكتب عن العجائب الطبيعية

1 What are natural wonders?

ما هي العجائب الطبيعية؟

- Natural wonders are beautiful places made by nature.
- They are not made by people.

2 What are some examples of natural wonders?

ما هي بعض الأمثلة على العجائب الطبيعية؟

1. Mountains
2. Waterfalls
3. Deserts
4. Forests
5. Oceans

Natural wonders

العجائب الطبيعية

3 Feelings:

المشاعر:

- I feel calm when I see beautiful nature.
- These places help me relax.

4 How should we protect natural wonders?

كيف يجب علينا حماية العجائب الطبيعية؟

- We must keep them clean.
- We should not harm plants or animals.
- Protecting nature helps our planet.

اقرأ هذا النموذج العجائب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة وتتعلم منه:

“Natural wonders”

Natural wonders are beautiful places made by nature, not by people. Some natural wonders are mountains, forests, deserts, oceans, and waterfalls. Mountains are high and give amazing views. Forests are full of trees and animals. Deserts are hot and dry with a lot of sand. Oceans are huge and full of sea creatures. Waterfalls are strong and exciting to watch. These wonderful places make me feel happy and calm. We should protect natural wonders by keeping them clean and caring for all plants and animals.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. Adam and Hoda went to the desert.
2. The birds were singing happy songs.

(.....)

(.....)



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

B) Listen again and complete:

3. They saw many tall in the forest.
4. The water in the river was very
5. They ate a nice near the water.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The trees amazed everyone when they saw how high they were.
a) length b) towering c) tiny d) mountain
2. You need to the weather before going out.
a) stay b) fall c) check d) avoid
3. The road was icy, so cars moved slowly. The synonym of "icy" is ".....".
a) snowy b) warm c) hot d) cooling
4. What an amazing book! "Amazing" here is a/an
a) verb b) noun c) adjective d) adverb

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

weather – prepare – hydrated – icy – ice

Today, we had a geography class. We learned about the different (1)..... conditions in some places. In Moscow, it is very cold and the roads are (2)..... . However, in Egypt, it is hot with a temperature of 34°C. Our teacher told us to stay (3)..... and avoid the sun. We must (4)..... wisely for all kinds of weather.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My dog is faster than your cat. (Your cat)
.....
2. No blanket feels softer than this blanket. (the softest)
.....
3. Ali is the best student in class. (No student)
.....
4. My new shoes are not tight. My old shoes are tight ضيق. (more comfortable)
.....

5 Complete the following dialog:

Adam and Salma are talking about rainy weather.

Adam : Look at the sky, it is raining.

Salma : I see the (1)..... falling on the grass.

Adam : Do the plants like the rain water?

Salma : Yes, the water (2)..... them grow big.

Adam : (3)..... do we need to go out now?

Salma : We need an umbrella to protect us.

Adam : (4)..... we walk under it together now?

Salma : Sure, we will stay dry that way.

6 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"A natural wonder you visited"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. No day was colder than Monday. (the coldest ...)

2. Rami's idea was smarter than everyone else's. (the smartest)

3. Reading books is more interesting than watching movies. (less)

4. Tamer is the tallest boy of all his friends. (No boy)

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

adapt (ed) (v)	يتكيف/يتأقلم	shrink (v)	ينكمش/يتقلص
biodiverse (adj)	متنوع بيولوجيًا	species (n)	نوع/فصيلة
nutrients (n)	مواد غذائية	tongue (n)	لسان
sensitive (adj)	حساس/رقيق الإحساس	Venus flytrap (n)	نبات ذبابة فينوس

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

bamboo (n)	نبات الخيزران	prey (n)	فريسة
competitive (adj)	تنافسي/محب للمنافسة	rapid (adj)	سريع
dark purple (adj)	بنفسجي داكن	responsive (adj)	متجاوب/سريع الاستجابة
desert animal (n)	حيوان صحراوي	snap (ped) (v)	يلتقط/يغلق فجأة
fascinating (adj)	رائع/فاتن	starfish (n)	نجمة البحر
fast-growing (adj)	سريع النمو	store (d) (v)	يخزن
growth (n)	نمو/زيادة	strange (adj)	غريب
increase (d) (v)	يزيد	sunburn (n)	حروق الشمس
insect (n)	حشرة	sweater (n)	سترة
leaf/leaves (n)	ورقة شجرة/أوراق	worth (adj)	جدير/ذو قيمة
living things (n)	كائنات حية	among (adv)	بين/وسط

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

benefit from	يستفيد من	home to	موطن لـ
lose home	يفقد مسكن/موطن	up to	حتى/بمقدار

Read and complete with a word from the list:

from – to – lose – shrink – competitive

- Many animals their home when people cut trees.
- My friend is very; he likes to win games.
- You will benefit practicing English a little each day.
- My T-shirt may if I wash it in hot water.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
grow ينمو/يكبر	grew	grown
shrink ينكمش/يتقلص	shrank	shrunk
shut يغلق	shut	shut

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning) مرادفها	Antonym (opposite) عكسها
fascinating	رائع/فاتن	wonderful رائع	boring/dull ممل/كئيب
growth	نمو/زيادة	increase/rise زيادة	decrease نقص
rapid	سريع	fast/quick سريع	slow بطيء
reach	يصل إلى	get to/arrive in/at يصل إلى	leave يترك/يفادر
shrink	ينكمش/يتقلص	reduce يقل	expand يتوسع/يتفدد
store	يخزن	keep/save يحفظ	use/waste يستخدم/يهدر
strange	غريب	unusual غير عادي	usual عادي
worth	جدير/ذو قيمة	precious ذو قيمة	worthless لا قيمة له

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefixes/Suffixes	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
compete (v)	يتنافس			competitive (adj) تنافسي/محب للمنافسة
sense (n)	حاسة	-ive	تحول إلى صفة	sensitive (adj) حساس
response (n)	رد/استجابة			responsive (adj) متجاوب/سريع الاستجابة
fascinate (v)	يفتن	-ing		fascinating (adj) رائع/فاتن

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Last spring, the small plant faster when it rained.
a) grow b) grew c) grown d) grows
- Forests will shrink if we keep cutting trees. The word "shrink" could be replaced with ".....".
a) reduce b) expand c) keep d) save
- The child made a rapid movement. The antonym of "rapid" is ".....".
a) fast b) new c) strange d) slow
- Ancient history fascinates me. To change the verb "fascinate" into an adjective, we delete "e" and add the suffix ".....".
a) -ive b) -ous c) -ing d) -able

Reading Text

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What is the most special thing you know about a giraffe?
- 2 Do you know what bamboo is?

 Read the following text. What should we do to help nature?

SB Page 76

Nature is full of **surprises**⁽¹⁾! Do you know a giraffe's tongue can be up to 50 cm long and is dark purple? This helps it reach high leaves and protects it from **sunburn**⁽²⁾. Starfish are also **fascinating**⁽³⁾—they usually have five arms, though some **species**⁽⁴⁾ can have more. Bamboo is one of the **fastest-growing**⁽⁵⁾ plants in the world; it can grow **up to**⁽⁶⁾ 90 cm in just one day! In the Amazon Rainforest, over 2.5 million species of animals live, making it one of the most **biodiverse**⁽⁷⁾ places on Earth. Among the many strange plants in nature is the Venus flytrap, which eats insects by **snapping**⁽⁸⁾ its leaves shut when **prey**⁽⁹⁾ touches its **sensitive**⁽¹⁰⁾ hairs.

These facts show how living things adapt to survive. A giraffe's long tongue helps it feed from tall trees. Bamboo's **rapid**⁽¹¹⁾ growth allows it to increase in **competitive**⁽¹²⁾ environments.

The Venus flytrap gets **nutrients**⁽¹³⁾ from insects, and desert animals store water to survive the heat. If the Amazon keeps shrinking, many species could lose their homes. Nature is amazing—and worth protecting.

Post-reading questions:

- 1 How does a Venus flytrap benefit from eating insects?
- 2 Which nature fact surprised you the most and why?
- 3 Which animal or plant from the reading would you like to learn more about?
- 4 Which nature fact would you share with a friend or family member? Why?
- 5 How do these facts make you think differently about protecting the environment?



- (1) مفاجات
- (2) حروق الشمس
- (3) رائع/فاتن
- (4) فصائل/أنواع
- (5) سريع النمو
- (6) حتى
- (7) متنوع بيولوجيًا
- (8) غلق
- (9) فريسة
- (10) حساس
- (11) سريع
- (12) تنافسي
- (13) مواد غذائية

Definitions التعريفات

adapt	يتكيف/يتأقلم	to change in order to survive	(1) حشرات
biodiverse	متنوع بيولوجيًا	having many different species
Venus flytrap	نبات ذبابة فينوس	a plant that eats insects ⁽¹⁾	(2) متاثر
sensitive	حساس/رقيق الإحساس	easily affected ⁽²⁾ or responsive ⁽³⁾	(3) متجاوب

1 by + (v + ing)

بواسطة

- Venus flytrap eats insects **by snapping** its leaves shut.

2 allow + مفعول + (to + inf.)

يسمح لـ

- Bamboo's rapid growth **allows** it **to increase** in competitive environments.

3 keep + (v + ing)

يستمر فى

- If the Amazon **keeps shrinking**, many species could lose their homes.

4 worth + (v + ing)

جدير/ذو قيمة

- Nature is amazing and **worth protecting**.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A place is one that has many different species.
a) worth b) biodiverse c) sensitive d) responsive
- Plants and animals to their environment, which means they change in order to survive.
a) keep b) store c) shrink d) adapt
- Some animals catch insects by their long tongues very quickly.
a) move b) moving c) moves d) moved
- Strong roots allow desert plants water during long dry seasons.
a) store b) to store c) storing d) to storing
- If we keep forests, animals will lose their homes.
a) destroy b) destroys c) destroying d) to destroy

B**SKILLS****Speaking**

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Talking about an amazing animal in nature

الحديث عن حيوان مذهل فى الطبيعة

← online



What amazing animal do you like? Why?

ما الحيوان المذهل الذى تحبه؟ لماذا؟

I like the dolphin because it is friendly and smart.

أنا أحب الدولفين لأنه ودود وذكى.



Where does it live?

أين يعيش؟

It lives in the ocean in many parts of the world.

يعيش فى المحيط فى العديد من مناطق العالم.



What makes it special?

ما الذى يجعل هذا الحيوان مميزاً؟

It can jump high and communicate with sounds.

إنه يقفز عاليًا ويتواصل بالأصوات.



How does it survive?

كيف ينجو أو كيف يعيش؟

It survives by staying close to its group.

ينجو عن طريق البقاء قريبًا من مجموعته.



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ Salma likes the lion most.

Ahmed: Do you know any amazing animals?

Salma: Yes, I really like the (1).....

Ahmed: (2)..... does the big lion live?

Salma: It lives in the sunny grasslands أراضي عشبية.

Ahmed: (3)..... is the lion so special?

Salma: Because it has a loud and scary roar.

Ahmed: How does the lion survive there?

Salma: It (4)..... other animals for food.



How to write about an amazing animal in nature

كيفية الكتابة عن حيوان مدهل فى الطبيعة

1 Appearance (What does it look like?) المظهر (كيف يبدو؟)

- The giraffe is the **tallest** animal in the world.
- It has a very **long neck**.
- It has **long legs**.
- Its color is **yellow and brown**.

2 Habitat (Where does it live?) الموطن (أين يعيش؟)

- It lives in **Africa**.
- It likes **grasslands** and open places.
- It lives in warm weather.

The Amazing Giraffe

حيوان الزرافة المدهش

3 Food (What does it eat?) الطعام (ماذا يأكل؟)

- It eats **green leaves**.
- It eats from **tall trees**.
- It does not drink water every day.

4 Amazing Facts (Why is it special?) حقائق مذهلة (لماذا هو مميز؟)

- It can **run fast**.
- It can **sleep standing up**.
- It has a very long tongue.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المدهش عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“The Amazing Giraffe”

The giraffe is a truly amazing animal in the animal kingdom. It is famous because it is the tallest animal in the world. Usually, giraffes live in the warm grasslands of Africa. They are easy to see because they have very long necks and strong, long legs. Their bodies are yellow with big brown spots. Giraffes use their height to eat fresh green leaves from the tops of tall trees. Surprisingly, they can even sleep while standing up! I like the giraffe because it is beautiful, gentle, and unique. It is my favorite animal.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Her response was very quick. To form the adjective of "response", we delete "e" and add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ing b) -able c) -ive d) -ous
2. Many desert animals benefit storing water in their bodies to survive heat.
 a) among b) up c) with d) from
3. Sharks use their sharp teeth to catch their in the ocean.
 a) bamboos b) nutrients c) prey d) giraffes
4. Some plants show rapid growth in spring. The antonym of "rapid" is ".....".
 a) slow b) quick c) useful d) long
5. The device is highly to temperature changes.
 a) sensitive b) competitive c) strange d) worth
6. Wool الصوف clothes may when you wash them in hot water.
 a) grow b) increase c) shrink d) snap
7. Bamboo is a plant that can grow more than one meter in a day.
 a) slow-growing b) fast-growing c) dark purple d) competitive
8. A environment has many species of plants and animals.
 a) narrow b) careless c) biodiverse d) dark
9. Some animals to extreme weather by hiding underground.
 a) adopt b) follow c) adapt d) surprise
10. My new phone is expensive, but it's the price.
 a) worth b) strange c) boring d) usual

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

nutrients – grow – animals – leaves – insects

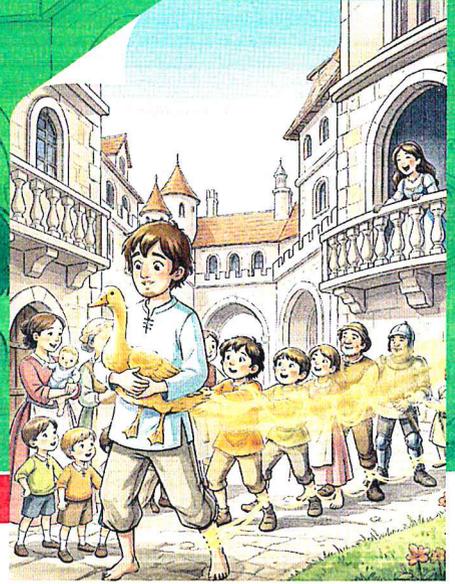
Plants are amazing living things that can be found everywhere in nature around us. Some plants are very strange and fascinating to watch. The Venus flytrap eats small (1)..... to get its food. It has special (2)..... that can snap shut very quickly. Another interesting plant is the bamboo. It can (3)..... very tall in a short time. All plants need water and (4)..... from the soil to stay healthy.

5

Chapter Five:
The Princess's
Laughter

Chapter (5) in points:

الفصل الخامس في نقاط



- 1 In the kingdom, there was a princess who never smiled or laughed.
في المملكة، كانت هناك أميرة لم تبسّم أو تضحك قط.
- 2 The king promised that if someone made her laugh, he could marry her.
وعد الملك أن من يجعل الأميرة تضحك فسوف يتزوجها.
- 3 Many people tried to make her laugh, but all of them failed.
حاول الكثير من الناس إضحاكها، لكنهم فشلوا جميعاً.
- 4 Dummling entered the town with his strange parade of stuck people.
دخل دوملينج البلدة مع موكبه الغريب من الأشخاص العالقين.
- 5 The princess saw them from her window and laughed out loud.
رأتهم الأميرة من نافذتها وضحكت بصوت عالٍ.
- 6 It was the first time she had ever laughed, and her heart filled with joy.
كانت تلك المرة الأولى التي تضحك فيها، وامتلاً قلبها بالفرح.
- 7 The king was surprised, but kept his promise.
دهش الملك لكنه التزم بوعده.
- 8 He told Dummling he could marry the princess if he proved himself worthy.
قال لدوملينج إنه يستطيع الزواج من الأميرة إذا أثبت أنه يستحق ذلك.
- 9 Many people still doubted Dummling because he was simple.
ما زال كثير من الناس يشكّون في دوملينج لأنه كان بسيطاً.
- 10 But Dummling's kindness and courage gave him strength for the next challenge.
لكن لطف دوملينج وشجاعته منحاه القوة لمواجهة التحدي التالي.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

determination (n)	إصرار	prove (d) (v)	يثبت
doubt (ed) (v)	يشكك	strength (n)	قوة
kingdom (n)	مملكة	worthy (adj)	جدير/مستحق

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

abilities (n)	قدرات	rule (d) (v)	يحكم
deserve (d) (v)	يستحق/يستأهل	scene (n)	مشهد
joy (n)	فرح/سعادة	skills (n)	مهارات
laughter (n)	الضحك	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح/يحقق نجاحًا
marry (y) (ied) (v)	يتزوج/يتزوج من	surprised (adj)	متفاجئ
physically (adv)	جسمانيًا	task (n)	مهمة/عمل
princess (n)	أميرة	value (n)	قيمة
promise (d) (v)	يعد/يقطع وعدًا		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

break a promise	يخلف وعدًا	keep a promise	يحافظ على وعد
face challenges	يواجه تحديات	sure about	متأكد بشأن
filled with	ملاءم بـ	try hard	يحاول بجد
for the first time	لأول مرة	win her hand in marriage	يفوز بيدها للزواج
give up	يستسلم/يتوقف		

Definitions التعريفات

determination	إصرار	not giving up easily and continuing to try hard
doubt	يشك	feel not sure about something or someone
kingdom	مملكة	a country ruled by a king or queen
prove	يثبت	show your abilities, skills, or value through actions
strength	قوة	being physically strong
worthy	جدير/مستحق	being good enough to deserve something

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 How did Dummling feel as he led the parade?
- 2 What does it mean to keep a promise? Why is it important for people to keep their promises?

 Read the following text. What helped Dummling to face challenges? *SB page 78*

Chapter Five: The Princess's Laughter

In the kingdom, there was a princess⁽¹⁾ who had never smiled or laughed. Her father, the king, said that whoever could make her laugh would win her hand in marriage⁽²⁾. Many tried, but none succeeded.

Who did the king promise to marry the princess to?

.....

When Dummling entered the town with his strange parade⁽³⁾ of people stuck⁽⁴⁾ to the goose, the princess looked from her window. She could not stop her laughter⁽⁵⁾ at the funny⁽⁶⁾ scene.

What did the princess see that made her laugh?

.....

For the first time, her heart was filled with joy⁽⁷⁾, and she laughed loudly. The king was surprised⁽⁸⁾ but kept his promise. He said that Dummling could marry his daughter if he could also prove himself worthy⁽⁹⁾ through other tasks⁽¹⁰⁾.

What did the king ask Dummling to do next?

.....

Though many still doubted⁽¹¹⁾ him, Dummling's kindness and determination gave him strength⁽¹²⁾ to face what was coming.

What gave Dummling the strength to keep going?

.....

(1) أميرة

(2) زواج

(3) موكب/مسيرة

(4) عالق بـ

(5) ضحك

(6) مضحك

(7) فرح/سعادة

(8) متفاجئ

(9) جدير/مستحق

(10) مهام/أعمال

(11) يشك/يرتاب

(12) قوة

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. What did the king promise to do?

ماذا وعد الملك أن يفعل؟

- The king promised that whoever could make the princess laugh would win her hand in marriage.

2. What did Dummling have with him when he entered the town?

ماذا كان مع دوملينج عندما دخل البلدة؟

- He had the golden goose and a long line of people stuck to it.

3. How did the princess react when she saw the parade?

كيف تصرفت الأميرة عندما رأت الموكب؟

- She couldn't stop her laughter and laughed loudly for the first time.

4. What did the king ask Dummling to do after the princess laughed?

ماذا طلب الملك من دوملينج بعد أن ضحكت الأميرة؟

- He asked him to prove he was worthy through other tasks.

5. What gave Dummling strength to face what was coming?

ما الذى منح دوملينج القوة لمواجهة ما ينتظره؟

- Dummling's kindness and determination gave him strength to face what was coming.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think the princess laughed at Dummling's parade and not at others?

لماذا تعتقد أن الأميرة ضحكت من موكب دوملينج ولم تضحك من الآخرين؟

- Because it was funny and unexpected. It wasn't planned to make her laugh.

2. How was Dummling different from the people who tried before him?

كيف اختلف دوملينج عن الأشخاص الذين حاولوا من قبله؟

- The others tried hard to impress her; he just walked calmly with his goose.

3. Why is it important that the king kept his promise?

لماذا من المهم أن يفي الملك بوعده؟

- Because promises show honesty and fairness, even for kings.

4. What does this chapter teach us about kindness and joy?

ماذا تعلمنا هذا الفصل عن اللطف والفرح؟

- It teaches that simple kindness can bring real happiness.

5. Do you think Dummling will succeed in the next tasks? Why?

هل تعتقد أن دوملينج سينجح فى المهام التالية؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, because his kindness and courage always help him.

Chapter 5 Exercises



SB page 79

1 Read and match the words to their meanings:

A

1. doubt
2. kingdom
3. worthy
4. determination
5. prove
6. strength

B

- a) not giving up easily and continuing to try hard
- b) show your abilities, skills, or value through actions
- c) a country ruled by a king or queen
- d) being physically strong
- e) being good enough to deserve something
- f) feel not sure about something or someone

2 Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the princess finally laugh?

.....

2. How did the king feel when he saw his daughter laughing?

.....

3. What did the king ask Dummling to do after making the princess laugh?

.....

4. Why do you think the people were surprised when Dummling entered the palace?

.....

3 Read and put True (T) or False (F):

1. The princess laughed easily at everything. (.....)
2. The king promised that whoever made his daughter laugh could marry her. (.....)
3. Dummling's parade made the princess smile and laugh. (.....)
4. The king broke his promise after seeing Dummling. (.....)
5. Dummling was ready to face new challenges. (.....)

4 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

1. If you were the king, what kind of tasks would you give Dummling to test if he truly deserves to marry the princess?

.....

2. Why do you think the princess laughed at Dummling's parade?

.....

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The princess had never in her life before Dummling came.

a) danced or sang	b) smiled or laughed
c) spoken	d) eaten
- ▶ 2. The king promised that anyone who made the princess laugh could

a) become king	b) marry the princess
c) own the goose	d) leave the kingdom
- ▶ 3. Dummling made the princess laugh with his

a) jokes	b) magic tricks
c) strange parade	d) singing
- ▶ 4. After the princess laughed, the king asked Dummling to prove he was

a) clever	b) rich	c) worthy	d) tall
-----------	---------	-----------	---------
- ▶ 5. Dummling's strength came from his and determination.

a) clothes	b) kindness	c) shoes	d) speed
------------	-------------	----------	----------

2 Write True (T) or False (F):

- ▶ 1. Many people made the princess laugh before Dummling arrived. (.....)
- ▶ 2. The princess laughed when she saw Dummling's long line of stuck people. (.....)
- ▶ 3. The king broke his promise because Dummling was poor. (.....)
- ▶ 4. Dummling must complete more tasks to marry the princess. (.....)
- ▶ 5. People still doubted Dummling even after he made the princess laugh. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- ▶ 1. Why do you think the princess was sad before Dummling came?
.....
- ▶ 2. How did Dummling make the princess laugh?
.....
- ▶ 3. What did the king say after the princess laughed?
.....
- ▶ 4. How did Dummling show that he was brave?
.....
- ▶ 5. If Dummling had been rude or selfish, how might the story have ended differently?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We need a place to store all the books. The opposite of "store" is ".....".
 a) shut b) keep c) waste d) snap
2. A lot of wildlife is fascinating. The suffix "-ing", added to the verb "fascinate", forms a/an
 a) verb b) noun c) adjective d) adverb
3. The Venus flytrap is a special plant that catches and eats to get nutrients.
 a) leaves b) insects c) animals d) bamboo
4. A giraffe uses its long, dark purple to reach high leaves.
 a) ear b) tongue c) eye d) nose

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Nature is full of fascinating and strange surprises. We can see many biodiverse species in the world. Bamboo is a fast-growing plant that reaches high up to the sky. Bamboo's rapid growth allows it to increase in competitive environments. Another plant is the Venus flytrap. It is very sensitive. When an insect touches it, the leaves snap shut quickly. This plant gets nutrients from the insects it eats. Giraffes are tall animals with long tongues. They eat leaves from high trees. All these living things adapt to survive in nature. We must help them so they do not lose their homes.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is
 a) how to grow bamboo b) amazing plants and animals
 c) the colors of flowers d) how to build a house
2. The underlined word "rapid" in the text means
 a) slow b) fast c) small d) cold

B) Answer the following questions:

3. How does the Venus flytrap get its nutrients?

4. Why do giraffes have long tongues?

5. Why do you think it is important to protect living things?

The Story

3 A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. The princess smiled a lot before she saw Dummling. (.....)
2. The king kept his promise and gave Dummling a chance. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

3. How is Dummling different from the others who tried to make her laugh?
.....
4. Why do you think laughter is important in our lives?
.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My friend's house is farther from school than my house. (closer)
.....
2. This new laptop is better than the old one. (worse)
.....
3. No player scored more goals than Ahmed. (the most)
.....
4. My bag is lighter than yours. (Your bag)
.....

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"An amazing animal you know"

.....
.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. No wonder is more fascinating than the river. (the most fascinating)
.....
2. Fatma is kinder than all her friends. (the kindest)
.....
3. This ice cream is colder than the milk. (warmer)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

creature (n)	مخلوق	hump (n)	سنام الجمال
glory (n)	مجد	eyelash (n)	رمش

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

achievement (n)	إنجاز	palm tree (n)	نخلة
ancient (adj)	قديم	root (n)	جذر
branch (n)	غصن/فرع	rushing (adj)	مندفعة
date (n)	تمر/بلحة	sand dunes (n)	كثبان رملية
eager (adj)	متلهف/متحمس	season (n)	فصل (من السنة)/موسم
energy (n)	طاقة	snapping (adj)	متطاير/متكسر
fantastic (adj)	رائع	source (n)	مصدر
fat (n)	دهن	tour (n)	جولة
harsh (adj)	قاسٍ	unique (adj)	فريد/مميز
modern (adj)	حديث	vast (adj)	متسعة
oasis/oases (n)	واحة/واحات		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

connect ... with	يربط... بـ	stand strong	يقف شامخاً
give cool shade	يوفر ظلًا باردًا	stay hydrated	يحافظ على رطوبة الجسم
reach deep	يمتد عميقًا	underground	تحت الأرض

Read and complete with a word from the list:

at – reach – with – glory – stay

- 1 The team won the game and felt great
- 2 The teacher connected the lesson a fun game.
- 3 The tree roots deep into the ground.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
stand يقف/يصمد	stood	stood

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
ancient	قديم	very old	قديم جداً	modern/new	حديث/جديد
eager	متلهف/متحمس	keen/interested	متحمس/مهتم	uninterested	غير مبالي
fantastic	رائع	wonderful	رائع	terrible	فظيع
glory	مجد	honor	فخر	shame	خزي
harsh	قاسٍ	severe	شديد/قاسٍ	gentle	لطيف
unique	فريد/مميز	special	مميز/خاص	common	شائع
hydrated	رطب	watered	مروى/ممسقى	dehydrated/dry	جاف

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefixes/Suffixes	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
achieve (v)	ينجز	-ment	تحول إلى اسم	تحول إلى اسم	achievement (n)	إنجاز
snap (v)	يلتقط/ينكسر فجأة	-ing	تحول إلى صفة	تحول إلى صفة	snapping (adj)	خاطف

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- After winning the competition, he felt great glory. The synonym of "glory" is ".....".
 a) shame b) honor c) terrible d) harsh
- My little sister was eager to visit the new museum in Giza. The antonym of "eager" is ".....".
 a) uninterested b) keen c) common d) wet
- This painting is so unique that no one else has anything like it. It isn't very
 a) common b) special c) ancient d) hydrated
- If you work hard, you can achieve your dreams. To turn the verb "achieve" into a noun, we remove "e" and add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ment b) -ly c) -ness d) -y

Reading Text

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What amazing places do you know in Egypt?
- 2 Which one is **ancient**⁽¹⁾? Which one is **modern**⁽²⁾?

 Read the following conversation. Guess the meaning of the expressions in bold.

SB Page 80

Tour Guide Welcome to Egypt. Are you ready to start our tour?

Tourist Yes, I can't wait. What will we start with? I want to see ancient and modern **wonders**⁽³⁾ in Egypt.

Tour Guide Well. We'll start by visiting the Pyramids **especially**⁽⁴⁾ the Great Pyramid in Giza. It's an ancient wonder in Egypt.

Tourist How amazing! How old is it?

Tour Guide It's 4000 years old and is still **standing strong**⁽⁵⁾.

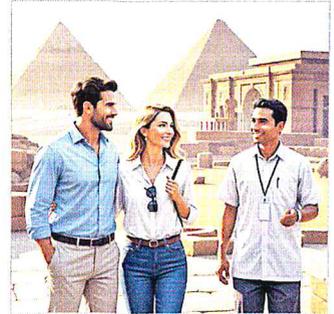
Tourist What other modern wonders can we visit?

Tour Guide We will visit the Grand Egyptian Museum near the Pyramids.

Tourist That's wonderful! Both the ancient and modern wonders in one place.

Tour Guide You are right. Egypt always **connects**⁽⁶⁾ its ancient **glory**⁽⁷⁾ with modern **achievements**⁽⁸⁾.

Tourist So, let's start. I'm **eager**⁽⁹⁾ to see what seems so **fantastic**⁽¹⁰⁾ in Egypt.



- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| (1) قديم | (2) حديث |
| (3) عجائب | (4) خصوصاً |
| (5) يقف شامخاً | (6) يربط |
| (7) فخر | (8) إنجازات |
| (9) راغب | (10) رائع |

Post-reading questions:

Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why did the tour start with the Pyramids?
.....
- 2 What makes the Great Pyramid special?
.....
- 3 What modern place will the tourists visit?
.....
- 4 Why is Egypt proud of its past and present?
.....

Pre-reading questions:

Lesson 6

1 What natural things do you see near your home-trees, birds, flowers, or something else?

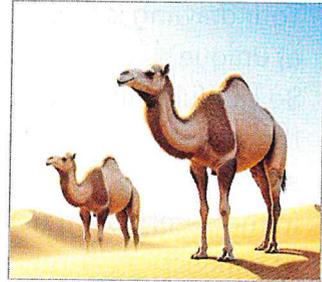
2 How does nature change during different seasons in your area?

Read the following text.

SB Page 82

“The Most amazing animal in the desert”

The camel is one of the most amazing animals living in the vast deserts⁽¹⁾. It has adapted perfectly to survive under the hottest weather forecast⁽²⁾. Its long legs help it walk easily across the endless sand dunes⁽³⁾. Unlike other animals, the camel can stay hydrated⁽⁴⁾ for many days. Its hump⁽⁵⁾ stores fat, not water, and its thick eyelashes⁽⁶⁾ protect it from snapping sand. Truly, it is one of the most unique and sensitive creatures of nature.



(1) الصحارى الواسعة (2) تنبؤ/توقع

(3) كثبان رملية (4) رطب

(5) سنام الجمال (6) رموش العينين

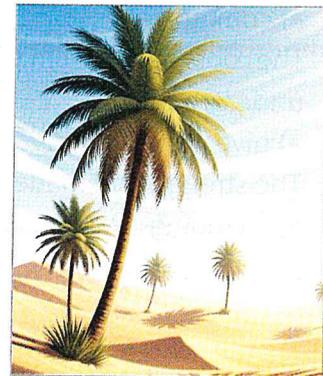
Post-reading question:

- How can camels adapt to survive in the desert?

.....

Read the following text.

Palm trees are among the most important plants in Egypt's oases. They can grow even when the weather is hot and dry. Their long roots reach deep to find water underground⁽¹⁾. The trees give cool shade, and their dates are a source of food and energy. For many people, palm trees show the beauty of life in the desert. They are taller and stronger than most trees and can survive in harsh weather. People understand their great value in desert nature⁽²⁾.



(1) تحت الأرض

(2) طبيعة

Post-reading question:

- How can long roots help palm trees?

.....

LESSONS

5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Finishing a long race is a/an you should be proud of.
 a) mistake b) achievement c) route d) method
2. Your drawing is fantastic. I like it. The opposite of "fantastic" is ".....".
 a) unique b) harsh c) terrible d) eager
3. Be careful with that stick; it might snap. When we double the letter "p" and add the suffix "....." to "snap", we get the adjective.
 a) -er b) -ly c) -ful d) -ing
4. In the desert, palm trees can cool shade to tired travelers.
 a) connect b) reach c) stand d) give
5. The Ancient Egyptians built temples near the that had fresh water and green plants.
 a) branches b) roots c) oases d) deserts
6. Farmers work hard during the planting
 a) energy b) tour c) creature d) season
7. Camels can store fat in their
 a) roots b) humps c) eyelashes d) ears
8. This museum has a/an collection of artifacts that no other place has.
 a) common b) usual c) unique d) cheap
9. The roots of the palm tree deep into the ground to find water underground.
 a) give b) reach c) stand d) stay
10. The strong wind made the dry branches and break with loud sounds.
 a) snapping b) fantastic c) harsh d) eager

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shade – palm – branches – dates – roots

The desert is a hot place, but it has amazing life. We see some big (1) trees growing. They give us cool (2) when the sun is very strong. I eat some sweet (3) from the high tree, and they taste very great. The strong (4) go deep underground to find fresh water to drink. This special tree is very important for many people in the dry sand.



How to write about nature and weather in your country

كيفية الكتابة عن الطبيعة والطقس في بلدك

Writing Tips

Use Sensory Details

Good writing helps the reader see, hear, and feel the scene.

Ask:

- What does it look like? (towering trees, vast desert)
- What does it sound like? (snapping branches, rushing waterfalls)
- How does it feel? (hot, dry, cool shade)

Example:

I could hear the snapping of dry branches as the wind blew through the towering plam trees.

1 The Landscape: المنظر الطبيعي

- The desert is vast and empty.
- The river flows from the south to the north.
- We have **towering** mountains (or buildings/trees).
- The fields are the **greenest** part of the area.

2 The Weather: الطقس

- Summer is **hotter** than winter.
- Winter is the **coldest** time of the year.
- It is sunny while it is windy.
- The weather is usually nice, **but** sometimes it rains.

Nature and weather in your country

الطبيعة والطقس في بلدك

3 Feelings (Details): المشاعر (التفاصيل)

- The flowers are sensitive to the cold.
- Nature is beautiful and colorful.
- I like spring because the weather is perfect.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“Nature and Weather in Egypt”

The nature in Egypt is very special. The vast desert is the driest place, but the Nile Valley is green and full of life. The river stretches across the whole country. In the countryside, you can see towering palm trees next to the water. The weather changes between seasons. Summer is much hotter than winter, while winter is mild معتدل and nice. We must take care of small plants because they are sensitive to the heat. I think the sunset on the Nile is the most beautiful view.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Nile is a main of water for millions of people in Egypt.
 a) creature b) branch c) source d) energy
- In the city center, you will find modern buildings, not ones like in the Old Cairo.
 a) eager b) new c) harsh d) ancient
- Hend was eager to learn about nature. The synonym of "eager" is ".....".
 a) keen b) know c) uninterested d) unique
- The old castle reminded visitors of its past glory. The antonym of "glory" is ".....".
 a) shame b) fascinating c) honor d) modern

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

energy – branch – hump – creature – harsh

The camel is a strong animal that lives in the sand. It is a fantastic (1)..... that walks for a long time. It has a big (2)..... on its back to store fat. This gives the camel (3)..... when there is no food to eat. The desert weather is often (4)..... and very hot for us. Camels can live there easily because they are built for this hot and dry place.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- There is no dry place like the Sahara Desert. (driest)

- This coffee is hotter than this cup of tea. (cooler)

- Everyone jumped lower than Samir. (the highest)

- Nothing in the box is lighter than this feather. (the lightest)

4 Complete the following dialog:

Karim is asking Nour about her opinion of the Alexandria Library.

Karim : Do you like the Alexandria Library?

Nour : Yes, it is a very (1)..... place.

Karim : What does it have there?

Nour : It has so many (2)..... to read.

Karim : What do you (3)..... about it most?

Nour : I like the shape of the building.

Karim : (4)..... does it look like?

Nour : It looks like the sun rising up.

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"An amazing place you visited in Egypt"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My jacket is thicker than your sweater. (Your sweater)
.....
2. My score was better than Ali's score. (worse)
.....
3. This shirt costs less than that jacket. (more expensive)
.....
4. Everyone worked harder than Hisham. (the laziest)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★	< 50% Study again	50 : 64% Practice more	65 : 84% Take more exams	85 : 100% Well done!
----------------------------	-------------------	------------------------	--------------------------	----------------------

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
flee	يفر	resist	يقاوم
spin	يلف/ يدور	decrement	تناقص
exist	يوجد	familiar	مألوف

2 Comprehension strategies:

Developing Critical Thinking Skills:

تطوير مهارات التفكير النقدي:

فى هذا الجزء سنتعرف على كيفية التفكير بعمق أثناء قراءة القطعة.
من الأسئلة الشائعة:

Why do you think

What do you think of

How to develop critical thinking:

كيفية تطوير التفكير النقدي:

1. لا تكثف بالسطر الظاهر – أسأل نفسك: «لماذا كتبت هذه الجملة؟»
2. فكر فى نية الكاتب – هل يقنع؟ يحذّر؟ يخبر؟ يسأل؟
3. ابحث عن الأفكار الضمنية – تلك التى ليست مذكورة مباشرة لكنها مفهومة من السياق.
4. ادمع رأيك بأدلة من النص – لا تعتمد على رأيك الشخصى فقط.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Many students in Giza now use online platforms to study at home. Some say it helps them focus better, while others miss talking to classmates.

What do you think of online learning?

.....
.....
.....

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- The Amazon Rainforest is one of the most biodiverse places on Earth.

- غابة الأمازون المطيرة هى واحدة من أقل الأماكن تنوعاً على الأرض.

- غابة الأمازون المطيرة هى واحدة من أكثر الأماكن تنوعاً على وجه الأرض.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

A camel can stay hydrated for several days.

A camel can stay dehydrated for several days.

- يمكن للجمل أن يبقى رطباً لعدة أيام.

adapt (ed)	يتكيف/ يتأقلم
avoid (ed)	يتجنب
bamboo	نبات الخيزران
biodiverse	متنوع بيولوجيا
check (ed)	يتفقد/ يتحقق
climate	مناخ
creature	مخلوق
determination	إصرار/ عزيمته/ تصميم
eyelash	رمش
fast-growing	سريع النمو
flat	مسطح
glory	مجد
hump	سنام
hydrated	رطب
landmarks	معالم
mist	ضباب خفيف/ ضبابية
nutrients	مواد غذائية
parade	موكب
sensitive	حساس/ رقيق الإحساس
shrink	يتكمنل/ يتقلص
species	نوع/ فصيلة
thunder	ترعد السماء/ الرعد
tongue	لسان
towering	شاهقة/ عال
Venus flytrap	نبات ذبذبة فينوس
Victoria Falls	شلالات فيكتوريا
wisely	بحكمة
wonders	عجائب
worthy	جدير/ مستحق

Comparatives & Superlatives

1) Comparative

a. Short Adjectives

short adj. + er + than + (طرف تاني)

e.g. My brother is taller than me.

b. Long Adjectives

more (طرف تاني) / less (الطرف) + long adj. + than + (طرف تاني)

e.g. Health is more important than money.

This movie is less interesting than that movie.

2) Superlatives

a. Short Adjectives

the + short adj. + est.

e.g. Ali is the tallest in his class.

b. Long Adjectives

the most (الطرف) / the least (الطرف) + long adj.

e.g. Nora is the most creative student.

This lesson is the least interesting for me.

A. Speaking

- What is the weather like today?

Today, the weather is sunny.

- What kind of weather do you prefer/ enjoy/ most?

I prefer cool weather because it feels comfortable.

- How does weather affect your daily life?

I wear different clothes and plan my activities.

- How does weather affect the environment around you?

Rain helps plants grow, and heat makes the ground dry.

- Which city has the most extreme weather and why?

I think Aswan has very extreme weather because it is very hot.

B. Writing

Natural wonders are beautiful places made by nature, not by people. Some natural wonders are mountains, forests, deserts, oceans, and waterfalls. Mountains are high and give amazing views. Forests are full of trees and animals. Deserts are hot and dry with a lot of sand. Oceans are huge and full of sea creatures. Waterfalls are strong and exciting to watch. These wonderful places make me feel happy and calm. We should protect natural wonders by keeping them clean and caring for all plants and animals.

A Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Lake Malawi has a lot of fish
 a) species b) spaces c) plants d) dishes
2. Table Mountain is one of the most famous natural in South Africa.
 a) gardens b) lakes c) landscapes d) museums
3. The waterfall created a soft that rose into the air.
 a) mist b) fire c) shadow d) leaf
4. The new engine is very, it can make the car go very fast.
 a) tiny b) quiet c) powerful d) weak
5. The Venus flytrap eats insects to get
 a) air b) nutrients c) water d) light

B Language

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The rabbit is than the cat.
 a) fast b) fastest c) faster d) the fastest
2. Moscow is the city in the weather report.
 a) cold b) colder c) coldest d) more cold
3. The rainforest is beautiful place I have ever seen.
 a) the most b) more c) most d) very
4. My friend's story about animals was than mine.
 a) exciting b) more exciting c) most exciting d) excite
5. These natural places remind us care for our planet.
 a) of b) to c) at d) for

C Writing

3 Write a paragraph (80 – 100 words) on: "Nature Around Me" Include:

- What natural things you see every day (trees, sky, flowers, animals).
- How they make you feel.
- Why it is important to protect nature.

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. Salma went to the Red Sea with her friends. (.....)
2. The weather was hot and sunny. (.....)

B) Listen again and complete:

3. They saw many bright in the water.
4. Ali played on the yellow
5. They saw a big jumping.

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Yassmina was to watch a documentary about desert animals.
a) eager b) interesting c) boring d) amazing
2. The beauty of the waterfall can amaze everyone. To form the adjective of "amaze", we remove "e" and add the suffix ".....".
a) -ing b) -ment c) -ly d) -ful
3. The sun was harsh at midday in the desert. The word "harsh" has the same meaning as ".....".
a) severe b) slow c) keen d) strength
4. In the early morning, a soft mist covers the valley. "Mist" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a) heavy rain b) air c) sunlight d) fog

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

tongue – sensitive – nutrients – Venus flytrap – insects

Nature has many strange plants that can do amazing things to stay alive. The (1)..... is a very special plant. It eats small (2)..... to get food because the soil is poor. This plant is very (3)..... to any touch. When a fly lands on it, the leaves shut quickly. It needs extra (4)..... to grow big and strong in the forest.

Unit 12

I WILL BE RESPONSIBLE



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Identify main ideas and supporting details in short texts about rules.

Guess the meaning of new vocabulary from context.

Listening

Understand the main ideas and details of short talks about daily rules and routines.

Distinguish between what students are allowed and not allowed to do.

Speaking

Role-play conversations about school and house rules using useful expressions.

Give and respond to instructions clearly and politely.

Language

Countable and Uncountable nouns.

Correctly use quantifiers (a, an, some, any, much, many, a lot of).

Writing

Write a rules poster about their own school/house rules and healthy habits.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

behavioral goals (n)	أهداف سلوكية	paying attention (n)	الاهتمام/الانتباه
feel proud (v)	يشعر بالفخر	politeness (n)	الأدب
good manners (n)	الأخلاق الحميدة	respect (v/n) (ed)	يحترم/احترام

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	raise (d) (v)	يرفع
chance (n)	فرصة	situation (n)	موقف
during (prep)	أثناء/خلال	staff (n)	طاقم العاملين
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح/يفسر	thoughtful (adj)	مراعٍ لشعور الآخرين
friendships (n)	صداقات	treat (ed) (v)	يُعامل/يعالج
interrupt (ed) (v)	يُقاطع/يعرقل	understanding (n)	الفهم
materials (n)	مواد خام/تعليمية	welcoming (adj)	مرحب/ودود
patience (n)	الصبر	well-raised (adj)	حسن التربية

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

avoid distractions	يتجنب المشتتات	on time	في الموعد المحدد
build strong friendships	يبنى صداقات قوية	polite to	مهذب مع
focus on	يركز على	show poor responsibility	يظهر ضعفًا في تحمل المسئولية
follow rules	يتبع القواعد	show respect	يحترم/يُظهر الاحترام
give a chance	يُعطي فرصة	stay focused	يظل مركزًا
kind to	لطيف مع		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

attention – avoid – well-raised – stay

- 1 Everyone admired her manners and said she was
- 2 We must distractions when we are studying.
- 3 You should pay in class to understand the lesson.

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition (conjunction) : لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

allow (ed) (v)	يسمح	house rules (n)	قواعد المنزل
chores (n)	أعمال المنزل	neatly (adv)	بنظافة/بترتيب
dust (ed) (v)	ينفض الغبار	place (d) (v)	يضع
Types of chores أنواع الواجبات المنزلية			
arrange clothes	يرتب الملابس	place the plates/forks/glasses in order	يضع الأطباق/الشوك/الأكواب بالترتيب
clean a room	ينظف غرفة	put the dishes away	يعيد/يرتب الأطباق إلى مكانها
dust the shelves	ينفض الغبار عن الأرفف	set the table	يعد المائدة/السفرة
finish homework	ينهى الواجب	wash the dishes	يغسل الأطباق
make the bed	يرتب السرير		

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

especially (adv)	خاصة/خصوصا	seem (ed) (v)	يبدو
little (adj)	قليل/صغير	simple (adj)	بسيط
organized (adj)	منظم	try (y-ied) (v)	يحاول/يجرب

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

arranged properly	مرتب بشكل صحيح	be allowed to	مسموح له بـ
do chores	يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية	spend time	يقضى وقتنا
on weekends	فى عطلات نهاية الأسبوع	help with	يساعد فى

Read and complete with a word from the list:

chores – set – on – in

Checkpoint

- 1 My dad helps my mom the table before meals.
- 2 I place my books order on the shelf.
- 3 Reham helps her parents with at home.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
throw	يرمى/يُلقي	threw	thrown
set	يُعد/يُجهز	set	set

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
focused	مركز	attentive	منتبه	distracted	مشتت
follow	يتبع	obey	يُطيع	ignore/break	يتجاهل/يُخالف
patience	الصبر	calmness	هدوء	impatience	نفاذ الصبر
proud	فخور	pleased	مسرور	ashamed	خجول
respect	احترام	appreciation	تقدير	disrespect	عدم احترام
organized	منظم	sorted/arranged	مرتب	messy	غير منظم

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
behavior (n)	سلوك	-al	تحول إلى صفة	behavioral (adj)	سلوكي
distract (v)	يششت	-ion	تحول إلى اسم	distracti <u>o</u> n (n)	تششيت
focus (v)	يركز	-ed	تحول إلى صفة	focus <u>e</u> d (adj)	مركز
learn (v)	يتعلم	-ing	تحول إلى اسم	learn <u>in</u> g (n)	التعلم
polite (adj)	مؤدب	-ness		polite <u>ne</u> ss (n)	الأدب

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Students must follow school rules. The synonym of "follow" is ".....".
 a) ignore b) forget c) distract d) obey
- She felt very proud of her achievement. The antonym of "proud" is ".....".
 a) pleased b) ashamed c) happy d) honored
- You need to focus on your lessons. To get the adjective of "focus", add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ion b) -ed c) -ing d) -ness

Reading Text

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What does it mean to be a good student at school?
 - 2 Why do schools have rules for students to follow?
-  Read the passage. Why is it important to respect classmates and teachers?

SB page 86

There are many things a student can do to be a good one.

To be a good student, I will always bring my books, notebooks, and materials so I can follow lessons and learn better. I will **raise**⁽¹⁾ my hand before speaking to show **respect**⁽²⁾ and give others a chance to **share**⁽³⁾. I will listen carefully when the teacher is explaining, because understanding starts with paying attention. I will treat my classmates and teachers with kindness, patience, and **politeness**⁽⁴⁾—because respect builds strong **friendships**⁽⁵⁾ and a happy classroom.



- | | |
|---------------|---------------------|
| (1) يرفع | (2) احترام |
| (3) يشارك | (4) الأدب |
| (5) صداقات | (6) يقاطع/يعرقل |
| (7) المشتتات | (8) الأخلاق الحميدة |
| (9) ترحيب/رحب | (10) يشعر بالفخر |

Behavioral Goals of a Good Student:

I will be on time for every class, because being late **interrupts**⁽⁶⁾ learning and shows poor responsibility. I will help keep our school clean by throwing trash in bins. I will not use my phone during lessons, because I want to stay focused and avoid **distractions**⁽⁷⁾. I will be polite and kind to everyone—teachers, students, and staff—because **good manners**⁽⁸⁾ make school a safe and **welcoming**⁽⁹⁾ place. By following these rules everyone can learn, grow, and **feel proud**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Why should good students bring books and notebooks every day?
.....
- 2 What must a good student do before speaking in class?
.....
- 3 How does arriving late affect learning?
.....
- 4 What happens when students use phones during lessons?
.....

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What house rules do you have at home?
- 2 Which rules need a lot of effort to follow?

Listen to the following text and answer the questions.

SB page 88



“Hi, I’m Rania. At home, I try to help my parents by following house rules⁽¹⁾ and doing chores. Every morning, I make my bed neatly⁽²⁾ before I go to school. I am not allowed to watch TV until I finish all my homework, so I usually do it first. In the evening, I set the table for dinner, placing the plates⁽³⁾, forks⁽⁴⁾, and glasses in order. After we eat, I help my mother wash the dishes and put them away. At the weekend, I spend extra⁽⁵⁾ time cleaning my room, dusting the shelves⁽⁶⁾, and arranging my clothes. Sometimes, I also help my little brother with his homework, especially⁽⁷⁾ in English. These small chores may seem simple, but they make our home organized⁽⁸⁾ and keep everyone happy.”

- | | |
|------------|-------------------|
| (1) قواعد | (2) بنظافة/بترتيب |
| (3) أطباق | (4) شوكة |
| (5) إضافي | (6) أرفف |
| (7) خصوصاً | (8) مرتب/منظم |

Post-listening question:

SB

Write True (T) or False (F).

- 1 Rania makes her bed every morning. (.....)
- 2 She is allowed to watch TV before finishing her homework. (.....)
- 3 Rania helps prepare the dinner table with some plates and glasses. (.....)
- 4 She washes a lot of dishes after meals. (.....)
- 5 On weekends, she only plays and never cleans. (.....)

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions	التعريفات	
chores	أعمال منزلية	tasks or jobs that you do at home to help
dust	ينفض التراب	clean something by wiping away dirt or dust
feel proud	يشعر بالفخر	feeling happy and confident about what you or others have done
good manners	الأخلاق الطيبة	saying "please," "thank you," and acting kindly in all situations
in order	بالترتيب	arranged properly
pay attention	يهتم/يركز	to listen carefully and focus on what is happening
place	يضع	put something in a certain position carefully
politeness	الأدب	behaving in a way that shows you are well-raised and thoughtful
respect	يحترم	to show care and kindness toward others
set the table	يجهز مائدة الطعام	prepare the table for a meal

1 help + (inf./to + inf.)

يساعد

Sara **helps** (keep/to keep) her school clean by picking up trash.

2 make + obj. + (inf./adj)

يجعل

You **make** me happy. I **made** Huda tidy the room.

3 It's important + (to + inf.)

من المهم أن

It's **important** to study hard before exams.

4 during + n.

أثناء/خلال

Students shouldn't use phones **during** lessons.

5 spend + time + (v+ing)

يقضى وقتاً

Aya **spent** three hours **studying**.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** To means to put something in a certain position carefully.
a) raise b) wipe c) distract d) place
- 2** It's important respect to others.
a) show b) to show c) to showing d) showing
- 3** Sara always helps her mother dinner.
a) to make b) to making c) made d) makes

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Parents should correct children's poor behavior early. To form the adjective from "behavior", add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ly b) -er c) -ness d) -al
2. Rana is always about other people's feelings.
 a) thoughtful b) interested c) focused d) kindness
3. Students should always their hand before speaking.
 a) rise b) raise c) hide d) lower
4. Try not to when someone is explaining something.
 a) interrupt b) smile c) listen d) agree
5. means staying calm and not getting angry quickly.
 a) Patience b) Speed c) Worry d) Sadness
6. Speaking to others in a nice and respectful way shows
 a) rudeness b) laziness c) politeness d) wealth
7. Phones should not be used during class because they cause
 a) excitement b) learning c) a distraction d) silence
8. Understanding begins with paying
 a) silence b) attention c) punishment d) protection
9. Good students follow the rules. The opposite of "follow" is
 a) obey b) respect c) disappear d) break
10. Having good helps people get along better.
 a) holidays b) manners c) ways d) chances

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

patience – paying – follow – bring – chance

Salma is a good student. She always brings her books, notebooks, and materials so she can (1)..... lessons easily. She raises her hand before speaking to show respect and give others a (2)..... . Salma listens carefully to her teachers because learning starts with (3)..... attention. She treats her classmates and teachers with kindness, (4)..... and politeness, which helps create a happy classroom.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Every morning, I always my bed, so it looks tidy and clean.
 a) do b) look c) make d) wash
2. My room isn't messy at all. It's always
 a) little b) simple c) realized d) organized
3. If you write your name on the paper, everyone will be able to read it.
 a) especially b) neatly c) simply d) wrongly
4. After dinner, my brother helps by the dishes, so the kitchen stays clean.
 a) making b) washing c) going d) watching
5. Mom asked me to the table before the guests arrive.
 a) set b) let c) get d) finish
6. On Friday mornings, many children chores to help their moms at home.
 a) wash b) watch c) do d) set
7. I always my homework in the evening, so I'm ready for school the next day.
 a) wash b) dust c) make d) finish
8. Let's the shelves before we put the books on them.
 a) dust b) wish c) set d) seem
9. To is to prepare the table for a meal.
 a) set the table b) place the forks
 c) put away d) make the bed
10. To something means to put it in a certain position carefully
 a) dust b) respect c) place d) clean

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dishes – washes – sets – chores – order

House rules are important to follow. We all help in doing the (1)
 I always finish my homework first before helping my mom. My little brother
 (2) the table by placing plates in order. After lunch, Dad puts the
 (3) away into the sink. My mom usually (4) the dishes after
 the meals.

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

(a/an/a lot of/many/much/some/any)

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

Nada woke up early to do (some/any) chores. She ate (a/an) apple before starting. There were (many/much) books on the desk and too (many/much) dust on the shelves. She picked up (any/some) toys. She didn't find (some/any) dirty clothes to wash. After finishing (much/a lot of) tasks, Nada felt proud and took (a/an) short rest.

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable Nouns:

- Things we can count one by one.

الأسماء التي تعد واحدة تلو الأخرى.

e.g. • a plate/plats, a fork/forks,
a rule/rules, a car/cars

Uncountable Nouns:

- Things we can't count separately.

الأسماء التي لا تعد بشكل منفصل.

e.g. • water, rice, money, information,
homework, time, money

Quantifiers محددات الكمية

(a / an / many / much / some / any / a lot of)

1. a/an

a

نستخدم «a» قبل الأسماء المفردة المعددة التي تبدأ بصوت ساكن.

e.g. • I have a new book.
• Did you see a monkey?

an

نستخدم «an» قبل الأسماء المفردة المعددة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك (a, e, i, o, u):

e.g. • She is eating an apple
• Do you want an orange?

2. many/much

many

تستخدم **many** قبل الأسماء المعدودة الجمع.

e.g. There are **many books** in the library.

much

تستخدم **much** قبل الأسماء غير المعدودة.

e.g. There is **much rice** in my dish.

Quantifiers for uncountable nouns

محددات الأسماء غير المعدودة

الأسماء غير المعدودة يمكن تحويلها إلى أسماء معدودة باستخدام المحددات التالية:

a bar of	قطعة/لوح من	a packet of	عبوة من
a slice of	شريحة من	a cup of	فنجان من
a loaf of	رغيف من	a spoonful of	مقدار ملعقة من
a jar of	برطمان من	a can of	علبه صفيح من
a pot of	وعاء/حلة من	a bottle of	زجاجة من
a glass of	كوب من	a carton of	كرتونة من
a kilo of	كيلو من	a bowl of	وعاء من
a bag of	حقيبة من	a piece of	قطعة من

e.g. I need a spoonful of sugar in my coffee.

- There are many bottles of juice in the fridge.
- Dad bought a carton of milk.
- I used a loaf of bread to make a sandwich.

Got it?

Rewrite the following sentence using the word(s) between brackets:

- I drank much water.

(many)

للتحويل من (much) إلى (many) يجب استخدام محددات الكمية المناسبة للاسم. في حالة (water) نستخدم

(glass / bottle) بعد كلمة (many).

- I drank many glasses of water.

3. some/any/a lot of:

تستخدم هذه المحددات مع الأسماء المعدودة الجمع والأسماء غير المعدودة.

1 some

جملة مثبتة

There are **some** apples in the kitchen.

عرض

Would you like **some** coffee?

طلب

Can I have **some** chips?

2 any

جملة منفية

There isn't **any** sugar in the jar.

سؤال بهل

Are there **any** white lions in Egypt?

3 a lot of

تستخدم قبل الأسماء الجمع والأسماء الغير معدودة فى جملة الإثبات فقط بمعنى (الكثير من):

e.g. • I need **a lot of** sugar to make a cake.

• There are **a lot of** people on the boat.

لاحظ أن

تستخدم (a lot of) فى الإثبات فقط بينما تستخدم (many) و (much) فى النفي والإثبات.

e.g. • I have **a lot of** books.

= I don't have **many** books.

Got it?

Rewrite the following sentence using the word(s) between brackets:

- There is some milk in the fridge. (any)

- تستخدم any فى النفي لذلك تتحول is إلى (isn't) ونستخدم any بدلاً من some.

- There isn't any milk in the fridge.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Salma bought..... umbrella because it started raining suddenly.
 a) a b) an c) many d) much
2. Mustafa drank water after running fast to catch the bus.
 a) many b) much c) a d) an
3. If you have question, you can ask your teacher.
 a) any b) much c) an d) a
4. Manal has friends.
 a) a b) an c) many d) much
5. I don't know information about global warming.
 a) some b) an c) much d) many

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- ▶ 1. Mr. Kamal offered me coffee. (a cup)

2. I need some sugar in my tea. (a spoonful of)

3. Ali has some money. (any)

4. Manal has many friends. (a lot of)

5. Omar ate a lot of rice yesterday. (didn't)

6. I have some books in my bag. (any)

7. Do you have any money? (Can I)

8. My mom bought some oranges. (2 kilos)

9. Rami bought some new clothes for work. (didn't buy)

10. I drank milk for breakfast. (a glass of)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Amira took photos during her holiday at the beach.
a) many b) much c) an d) a
- We didn't have time to finish the project yesterday.
a) a lot of b) many c) much d) some
- Don't forget to buy milk on your way home.
a) any b) some c) much d) a
- Amal didn't have money to go out last week.
a) much b) an c) a d) some
- I need hour to finish this task.
a) a b) an c) some d) any

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Mom bought some vegetables for dinner. (any)
.....
- We didn't see any birds in the garden today. (some)
.....
- Can you buy us some bread? (loaves)
.....
- Sami bought a lot of gifts for his family. (many)
.....
- She didn't eat much food at the party. (a lot of)
.....
- There is some meat left for you. (two pieces)
.....
- They didn't have much fun at the park. (a lot of)
.....
- I bought some pencils for school. (any)
.....
- How much coffee do you drink daily? (many)
.....
- How much water do you drink every day? (glasses)
.....
- She ate a lot of pasta. (much)
.....

حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





My house rules and my friend's rules

مقارنة بين قواعد المنزلية وقواعد صديقي

My rules قواعدي	My friend's rules قواعد صديقي	Similarities and Differences أوجه الشبه والاختلاف
I make my bed. أقوم بترتيب سريري.	He makes his bed. هو يقوم بترتيب سريره.	We both make our beds. نحن الاثنان نقوم بترتيب أسرتنا.
I'm not allowed to play games on school nights. لا يُسمح لي بممارسة الألعاب في الليالي التي تسبق المدرسة.	He can play games on school nights. يمكنه ممارسة الألعاب في الليالي التي تسبق المدرسة.	I can't play games on school nights, but he can. لا أستطيع ممارسة الألعاب في الليالي التي تسبق المدرسة، لكنه يستطيع ذلك.
I must finish homework before watching TV. يجب أن أنهى واجباتي المدرسية قبل مشاهدة التلفاز.	He must finish homework before watching TV. يجب عليه إنهاء واجباته المدرسية قبل مشاهدة التلفاز.	We both must finish homework first. نحن الاثنان يجب علينا أن ننتهي من واجباتنا المدرسية أولاً.
I wash the dishes. أنا أغسل الأطباق.	He doesn't wash the dishes. هو لا يغسل الأطباق.	I wash the dishes, but he doesn't. أنا أغسل الأطباق، لكنه لا يفعل ذلك.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Rana and Reem are talking about house rules.

Rana : What do you do at home, Reem?

Reem : I (1)..... my bed every morning.

Rana : Me too! But, I'm not allowed (2)..... play games on school nights.

Reem : That's different! I can play games on school nights.

Rana : I must finish my homework before I watch TV. (3)..... about you?

Reem : Me too! We both must finish homework first.

Rana : (4)..... you wash the dishes after dinner?

Reem : No, I don't wash the dishes at home.



How to write about school rules

كيفية الكتابة عن قواعد المدرسة

1 Places to follow rules:

الأماكن التي يجب اتباع القواعد فيها:

- **Classrooms:** Be quiet and keep things tidy.
- **Library:** Read and study quietly.
- **Playground:** Play safely and share with friends.

2 How to follow rules:

كيفية اتباع القواعد:

- Come to school on time.
- Raise your hand before speaking.
- Don't run in hallways.

School rules

قواعد المدرسة

3 Our role as students:

دورنا كطلاب:

- Respect teachers and classmates.
- Help friends when needed.
- Encourage others to follow the rules.

4 Why it is important to follow rules:

لماذا هو مهم أن نتبع القواعد:

- Rules keep everyone safe.
- Rules help us learn better.
- They make school a happy place.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

“School rules”

School rules are very important because they help students learn and stay safe. In classroom, we should be quiet and organized. We must raise our hands before speaking and arrive on time. On the playground, we should play safely and respect others. We should also take care of books, furniture, and all school property **ممتلكات المدرسة**. Following school rules makes the school a happy and safe place for everyone. It also makes us responsible students.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. I can finish my homework after playing games. (.....)
2. Everyone should respect each other at home. (.....)

B) Listen again and complete:

3. I must my bed every morning.
4. We should help our parents with
5. Following house rules makes our home and comfortable.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Every weekend, Rania time cleaning her room.
a) finishes b) washes c) sits d) spends
2. Reem spoke in a polite way to her boss. To form the noun of "polite", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -er b) -ion c) -ness d) -ation
3. You must stay focused during your lessons. The antonym of "focused" is
a) attentive b) polite c) distracted d) careful
4. Saying "please" and "thank you" to people shows that you have
a) patience b) good manners c) chores d) bad manners

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

weekend – taking – washing – trash – chores

Ahmed is a helpful boy at home. Every morning, he makes his bed and cleans his room. After school, he helps his mother in the kitchen by (1) the dishes and preparing snacks. Every (2), Ahmed waters the plants and takes out the (3) He likes doing (4) because it makes his home clean and tidy. Ahmed knows that helping his family is important and makes everyone happy.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I need some help. (any)
.....
2. How many loaves of bread did Ali buy? (much)
.....
3. How much time do you spend chatting with your friends? (hours)
.....
4. There aren't any students in the classroom. (some)
.....

5 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Rana are talking about house rules.

Sara : It's important to follow house rules. Do you agree?

Rana : (1)....., I do.

Sara : Do you (2)..... your bed in the morning?

Rana : Yes, I make my bed before having breakfast.

Sara : Do you watch TV before finishing homework?

Rana : No, I (3)..... watch TV until I finish my homework.

Sara : I help my parents with (4)..... . What about you?

Rana : I help with washing the dishes and cleaning my room.

6 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"School rules"

.....
.....
.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I need to buy some milk. (a bottle)
.....
2. It is not healthy to drink much coffee. (cups)
.....
3. All rabbits like carrots. (A rabbit)
.....
4. We have some seats left. (don't)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

balanced (adj)	متوازن	hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية
stress (n)	الضغط/التوتر	surroundings (n)	الأشياء المحيطة بنا
teenager (n)	مراهق	well-being (n)	الصحة العامة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجات	muscles (n)	عضلات
enough sleep (n)	نوم كاف	physical activity (n)	النشاط البدني
especially (adv)	خصوصاً/على وجه الخصوص	proteins (n)	البروتينات
fit (adj)	لائق بدنياً	relaxing (adj)	مريح
healthy life (n)	حياة صحية	responsible choice (n)	اختيار مسئول
key habit (n)	عادة رئيسية	smart choice (n)	اختيار ذكي
lungs (n)	الرئتان	sugary drinks (n)	مشروبات سكرية
matter (v) (ed)	يهم	whole grains (n)	الحبوب الكاملة
mental health (n)	الصحة العقلية		

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

engage in	يشارك في	at least	على الأقل
feel good	يشعر بالراحة	feel refreshed	يشعر بالانتعاش
limit screen time	يحد/يقلل من وقت الشاشة	protect from	يحمي من
plenty of	كثير من	reduce stress	في قلب/وسط
stay active	يظل نشيطاً	stay focused	يبقى متبهاً
stay positive	يظل إيجابياً	take responsibility for	يتولى مسؤولية
make a choice	يختار/يحدد		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

from – of – hygiene – stress

- 1 Personal helps protect you from getting sick.
- 2 Physical activity reduces
- 3 Vitamins protect us illnesses.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تمريرفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
keep	يحافظ	kept	kept
take	يأخذ	took	taken

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning) مرادفها	Antonym (opposite) عكسها
healthy	صحي	fit لائق	unhealthy غير صحي
difficult	صعب	hard صعب	easy سهل
smart	ذكي	intelligent/clever ذكي	stupid/foolish غبي/أحمق
strong	قوي	powerful قوي	weak ضعيف
responsible	مسئول	reliable يُعتمد عليه	irresponsible غير مسئول
key	رئيسي	main أساسي	minor ثانوي
active	نشط	energetic مفعم بالنشاط	inactive/lazy كسول/غير نشيط

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
healthy (adj)	صحي	un-	تحويل إلى العكس	unhealthy (adj)	غير صحي
sugar (n)	السكر	-y	تحويل إلى صفة	sugary (adj)	سكري
health (n)	الصحة			healthy (adj)	صحي
ill (adj)	مريض	-ness	تحويل إلى اسم	illness (n)	المرض
teenage (adj)	مراهق	-er		teenager (n)	مراهق

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- That was a smart answer. The synonym for "smart" is ".....".
 a) stupid b) intelligent c) weak d) lazy
- Kangaroos have strong arms. The opposite of "strong" is ".....".
 a) powerful b) weak c) responsible d) balanced
- Eating too much sugar can harm your teeth. To form the adjective from the noun "sugar", we add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ion b) -ly c) -ive d) -y

Reading Text

Lesson 3

SB Page 90

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What are some healthy habits people follow every day?
- 2 What do you do at home or school to stay safe and well?

Read the following passage. What is hygiene?

Living a healthy life isn't difficult when we make **smart**⁽¹⁾ and **responsible**⁽²⁾ choices. One important habit is eating **balanced**⁽³⁾ meals every day. Our bodies need fruits, vegetables, whole **grains**⁽⁴⁾, and proteins to stay strong. It's also better to drink plenty of water instead of sugary drinks.

Another **key**⁽⁵⁾ habit is staying active. Engaging in activities like walking, running, cycling, or playing football with friends helps keep the heart, lungs, and muscles fit. Physical activity also reduces stress and gives us more energy.

Getting enough sleep is just as important. **Teenagers**⁽⁶⁾ especially need at least eight hours of sleep each night to stay focused at school and feel refreshed during the day.

Caring for our **mental health**⁽⁷⁾ is part of living well. Talking to friends and family, relaxing, and limiting screen time are great ways to stay positive and calm.

Finally, personal **hygiene**⁽⁸⁾ matters. Washing hands, brushing teeth, and keeping our surroundings clean help protect us from illness and keep everyone feeling good.

By making these healthy choices, we take responsibility for our **well-being**⁽⁹⁾ and enjoy a happy, strong, and active life.



- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) ذكي | (2) مسئول |
| (3) متوازن | (4) حيوب |
| (5) رئيسي | (6) المراهقين |
| (7) الصحة العقلية | (8) النظافة الشخصية |
| (9) الصحة العامة/العافية | |

SB

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why is it important to eat balanced meals every day?
.....
- 2 How does regular exercise help students?
.....
- 3 What are two good ways to care for mental health?
.....
- 4 Why is personal hygiene important for a healthy life?
.....



How to write about the importance of personal hygiene

كيف نكتب عن النظافة الشخصية

1

What is hygiene?

ما هي النظافة الشخصية؟

- Hygiene means keeping our body and surroundings clean.

2

What are some daily hygiene habits?

ما هي بعض العادات اليومية للنظافة الشخصية؟

- Wash your hands before and after eating.
- Brush your teeth two times a day.
- Take regular showers.
- Wear clean clothes and keep personal items tidy.

3

What can students learn?

ماذا يمكن للطلاب تعلمه؟

- Students learn why hygiene is important for health.
- They learn good habits like washing hands, brushing teeth, and cleaning their rooms.

The importance of hygiene

أهمية النظافة الشخصية

4

How should we behave?

كيف ينبغي أن نتصرف؟

- We should be careful and clean.
- We must not throw trash or make our surroundings dirty.
- We should follow hygiene rules at school and home.

5

Why is hygiene important?

لماذا النظافة الشخصية مهمة؟

- It protects our bodies from diseases.
- It teaches responsibility and care for ourselves and others.
- It helps everyone feel comfortable, healthy, and happy.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتتعلم منه:

“The importance of hygiene”

Hygiene is very important for keeping our bodies healthy. Many people follow hygiene habits to stay clean and avoid getting sick. We should wash our hands, brush our teeth, take baths, and wear clean clothes every day. Students learn how hygiene protects them from diseases and why it is important for their health. To take care of our hygiene, we mustn't throw trash, we must keep our surroundings clean. Hygiene helps protect our bodies and teaches responsibility. It is an important habit that keeps everyone feeling comfortable and healthy.

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. We should avoid too much screen time to stay
 a) prepared b) lost c) broken d) focused
2. Drinking sugary drinks is not a/an choice.
 a) unhealthy b) healthy c) warm d) active
3. Making healthy choices shows we are
 a) lonely b) irresponsible c) angry d) responsible
4. Hala didn't go to school because she was ill. To form the noun of "ill", we add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ion b) -ment c) -ness d) -ation
5. I try to stay active by walking every morning. The synonym of "active" is
 a) lazy b) energetic c) tired d) quiet
6. Walking, running, and cycling are examples of activity.
 a) homework b) class c) physical d) mental
7. Students can group discussions to improve their skills.
 a) hide from b) throw away c) engage in d) take part
8. Regular exercise is good for our
 a) well-being b) grains c) sickness d) boredom
9. Students must responsibility for keeping their classroom clean.
 a) give b) ignore c) forget d) take
10. Physical activity helps stress and gives us more energy.
 a) increase b) reduce c) create d) forget

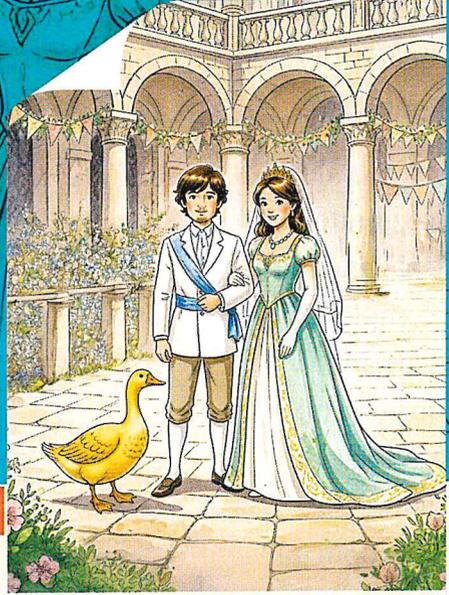
2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

from – to – mental – heart – grains

Living a healthy life is easy when we make smart and responsible choices. Eating balanced meals with fruits, vegetables, whole (1), and proteins keeps our bodies strong. Staying active through walking, running, or playing sports helps our (2), lungs, and muscles. Enough sleep and caring for (3) health keep us focused and calm. Personal hygiene, like washing hands and brushing teeth, protects us (4) illness. These habits support our well-being and happiness.

6

Chapter Six: Dummling's Reward



Chapter (6) in points:

الفصل السادس في نقاط

- 1 The king kept his promise and allowed Dummling to marry the princess.
أوفى الملك بوعده وسمح لدوملينج بالزواج من الأميرة.
- 2 Dummling passed all the challenges wisely.
اجتاز دوملينج كل التحديات بحكمة.
- 3 A great wedding was held, and the whole kingdom celebrated.
أقيم حفل زفاف كبير واحتفلت المملكة كلها.
- 4 People stopped laughing at Dummling.
توقف الناس عن السخرية من دوملينج.
- 5 His kindness and modesty brought him great success.
جلبت طيبة دوملينج وتواضعه نجاحاً كبيراً.
- 6 He became a wise and kind prince loved by everyone.
أصبح أميراً حكيماً ولطيفاً يحبه الجميع.
- 7 The golden goose stayed with him as a reward for his kindness.
بقيت الإوزة الذهبية معه كمكافأة لطيته.
- 8 The story showed that true wealth is kindness and love, not gold.
أظهرت القصة أن الثروة الحقيقية هي الطيبة والمحبة وليس الذهب.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

fortune (n)	ثروة	goodness (n)	الخير/طيبة القلب
modesty (n)	تواضع	humility (n)	التواضع
generosity (adj)	كرم/جود	kindness (n)	لطف
grand (adj)	ضخم/عظيم	remain (ed) (v)	يبقى/يظل

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل بـ	quality (n)	صفة
challenges (n)	تحديات	reward (ed) (v)/(n)	يكافئ/مكافأة
complete (d) (v)	يكمل/يكتمل	sign (n)	علامة
exist (ed) (v)	يوجد	soul (n)	روح
fortune (n)	ثروة	spread (v)	ينتشر
gentle (adj)	لطيف	tale (n)	حكاية
impressive (adj)	مذهل	wealth (n)	ثروة
kingdom (n)	مملكة	wise (adj)	حكيم
prince (n)	أمير	wisely (adv)	بحكمة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

true to his word	وفياً بوعده	lie in	يكمن في
laugh at	يسخر من	no longer	لم يعد
across the land	عبر البلاد	a sign of	علامة على
achieve success	يحقق النجاح		

Definitions التعريفات

fortune	ثروة/حظ	great wealth or good luck
generosity	كرم/جود	being kind and giving
goodness	الخير/طيبة القلب	the quality of being good
grand	ضخم/عظيم	large, beautiful, and impressive
modesty	تواضع	not thinking you are better than others and showing respect
remained	بقى/ظل	continue to exist

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 How did Dummling make the princess laugh and what did the king promise to do?
- 2 What do you think happens to kind people at the end of a story?

 Read the following text. Do you think the king would respect Dummling in the end? Why?

SB page 92

Chapter Six: Dummling's Reward

The king was true to his word and allowed Dummling to marry the princess after he completed the challenges⁽¹⁾ wisely. The wedding was grand⁽²⁾, and the whole kingdom celebrated.

(1) تحديات

(2) عظيم

(3) تواضع

(4) ثروة

(5) علامة على

(6) أثبتت

(7) روح

(8) ينتشر

What did the king allow Dummling to do?

.....

The people no longer laughed at Dummling, for his kindness and modesty⁽³⁾ had brought him great fortune⁽⁴⁾. He became a wise and gentle prince, loved by all.

How was Dummling as a prince?

.....

The golden goose remained with him, a sign of⁽⁵⁾ the rewards of kindness and generosity. Dummling's goodness proved⁽⁶⁾ that even the simplest soul⁽⁷⁾, with a kind heart, could achieve success.

What was the golden goose a sign of?

.....

The tale of the golden goose spread⁽⁸⁾ across the land, reminding all that true wealth lies not in gold, but in kindness, modesty, and love

In your opinion, what lesson did the tale of the golden goose teach us?

.....

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. Why did the king allow Dummling to marry the princess?

لماذا سمح الملك لدوملينج بالزواج من الأميرة؟

- Because he completed the challenges wisely.

2. How was the princess and Dummling's wedding? كيف كان زفاف الأميرة ودوملينج؟

- The wedding was grand, and everyone in the kingdom celebrated.

3. Why did people stop laughing at Dummling? لماذا توقف الناس عن السخرية من دوملينج؟

- Because his kindness and modesty brought him great fortune.

4. What kind of prince was Dummling?

أى نوع من الأمراء أصبح دوملينج؟

- He became a wise and gentle prince, loved by all.

5. What lesson did the tale of the golden goose teach?

ما الدرس الذى علمته قصة الإوزة الذهبية؟

- True wealth lies in kindness, modesty, and love, not in gold.

Critical thinking questions:

1. How did Dummling's kindness and modesty help him succeed?

كيف ساعدت طيبة دوملينج وتواضعه على نجاحه؟

- His kindness and modesty earned him respect and rewards, leading to his success.

2. Why do you think the king kept his promise to Dummling?

لماذا تعتقد أن الملك حافظ على وعده لدوملينج؟

- Because Dummling completed the challenges wisely and proved himself worthy.

3. Why is the golden goose important in the story?

لماذا تُعد الإوزة الذهبية مهمة فى القصة؟

- It symbolizes the rewards of kindness and generosity.

4. Why is true wealth described as kindness, modesty, and love rather than gold?

لماذا تُوصف الثروة الحقيقية بالرحمة والتواضع والمحبة بدلاً من الذهب؟

- Because real happiness and respect come from good actions, not material wealth. الثروة المادية.

5. If you were the king, would you allow Dummling to marry the princess just because he made her laugh? Why?

لو كنت أنت الملك، فهل كنت ستسمح لـ«دوملينج» بالزواج من الأميرة فقط لأنه جعلها تضحك؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I would. Because I love my daughter and I must keep my word as a king.

1 Match the words from column (A) with their meanings from column (B):

A

- 1. grand
- 2. modesty
- 3. fortune
- 4. remained
- 5. goodness
- 6. generosity

B

- a) not thinking you are better than others and showing respect
- b) large, beautiful, and impressive
- c) great wealth or good luck
- d) the quality of being good
- e) being kind and giving
- f) continue to exist

2 Answer the following questions:

1. What did the king allow Dummling to do after completing the challenges?

.....

2. How did the people's opinion toward Dummling change?

.....

3. What kind of person did Dummling become after his marriage?

.....

4. Explain in your own words what the story teaches us about true fortune.

.....

3 Read and put True (T) or False (F):

- 1. The king did not keep his promise to Dummling. (.....)
- 2. Dummling became a gentle and wise prince. (.....)
- 3. People still laughed at Dummling after his marriage. (.....)
- 4. The golden goose was a symbol of kindness and reward. (.....)
- 5. The story teaches us that love and kindness are more valuable than gold. (.....)

4 Answer the following questions: (Critical Thinking)

1. Why do you think Dummling's kindness was more powerful than his brothers' cleverness or pride?

.....

2. What message does the story send about how we should treat others?

.....

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The king was true to his word. This means that he

a) broke his promise	b) ignored his promise
c) kept his promise	d) thought of his promise
2. Dummling completed the challenges

a) wisely	b) quickly	c) carelessly	d) loudly
-----------	------------	---------------	-----------
3. Even the simplest soul with a kind heart could achieve

a) success	b) failure	c) sadness	d) politeness
------------	------------	------------	---------------
4. People no longer at Dummling.

a) smiled	b) laughed	c) talked	d) loved
-----------	------------	-----------	----------
5. True wealth lies in kindness,, and love.

a) anger	b) gold	c) power	d) modesty
----------	---------	----------	------------

2 Write True (T) or False (F):

- ▶ 1. The king broke his promise to Dummling. (.....)
2. Dummling completed the challenges badly. (.....)
3. The people of the kingdom kept laughing at Dummling. (.....)
4. Dummling became a wise and gentle prince. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- ▶ 1. What reward did Dummling receive?
.....
2. What object stayed with Dummling at the end?
.....
3. What did the people stop doing?
.....
4. What qualities does the story say true wealth lies in?
.....
5. What do you think is the best lesson the story can teach us?
.....

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Too much can harm your health.
a) advice b) homework c) exercise d) stress
2. We should keep our clean.
a) challenges b) surroundings c) lessons d) sports
3. Trust is a key part of any strong friendship. The opposite of "key" is
a) main b) important c) minor d) useful
4. Eating healthy food is a good habit. To form the opposite of "healthy", add the prefix ".....".
a) un- b) dis- c) il- d) ir-

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Rana lives a balanced متوازنه life by making healthy choices every day. She starts her day with a healthy breakfast, including fruits and whole grains. Rana knows that eating different types of healthy foods helps her stay **active** and strong. She also drinks plenty of water instead of sugary drinks.

Rana walks to school, plays tennis, and swims in her free time. She believes physical activity helps keep her heart, lungs, and muscles strong. She also makes sure to get enough sleep every night, about 8 hours, to feel refreshed and focused at school.

Rana cares for her mental health by talking to her friends, spending time with her family, and relaxing. She knows that balancing physical and mental health is the key to living a happy and healthy life.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about
a) Rana's sports b) Rana's balanced life
c) Rana's school life d) Rana's healthy food
2. The word "active" in the text can mean
a) energetic b) lazy c) busy d) sleepy

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why does Rana choose to eat different types of healthy foods?
4. What are some activities Rana does to stay fit and healthy?
5. How do you think Rana's healthy habits could inspire others to live a balanced life?

The Story

3 A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. The golden goose symbolized kindness and generosity. (.....)
2. The kingdom celebrated Dummling's wedding because of his wealth. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What qualities made Dummling loved by everyone?
.....
4. Do you like Dummling's character? Why?
.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I have a lot of shirts. (don't)
.....
2. How much tea do you drink every day? (many)
.....
3. There is some water in the bottle. (any)
.....
4. Aya received much information. (a lot of)
.....

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"The importance of having hygiene"

.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Please, give me some water. (a glass)
.....
2. Your idea is wonderful. (You've given)
.....
3. Samir has a lot of cousins. (How)
.....
4. Sara bought a lot of rice. (many kilos)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

eye-catching (adj)	جذاب	hospitality (n)	الكرم
healthy choices (n)	خيارات صحية	instructions (n)	تعليمات
sign (ed) (v)	يوقع الاسم	sharing (n)	المشاركة
siblings (n)	إخوة	school principal (n)	ناظر مدرسة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

clear (adj)	واضح	avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب
grandchildren (n)	أحفاد	mistakes (n)	أخطاء
grandmother (n)	جدة	steps (n)	خطوات
hallways (n)	ممرات	lists (n)	قوائم
stove (n)	موقد/ بوتاجاز	attractive (adj)	جذاب

Language Expressions and Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

on time	فى الموعد المحدد	help with	يساعد فى
give instructions	يعطى تعليمات	get ready	يستعد
put away	يضع شىء فى مكانه	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
careful about	حريص بشأن	save water	يدخر/يوفر الماء

Read and complete with a word from the list:

on – instructions – siblings – away

- The train to Cairo always arrives time.
- I share food with my
- My teachers always give us useful

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
run	يجرى	ran	run

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
on time	في الموعد المحدد	punctual	منضبط	late	متأخر
dangerous	خطير	risky	خطير	safe	آمن
finish	ينتهي	complete	يُكمل	start	يبدأ
tidy	مرتب	neat	أنيق	messy	فوضوي
careful	حريص	cautious	حذر	careless	مهمل
polite	مهذب	respectful	محترم	rude/impolite	وقح/غير مهذب

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
danger (n)	خطر	-ous	تحويل إلى صفة	dangerous (adj)	خطير
care (n)	الرعاية	-ful		careful (adj)	حريص

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Students must come on time. This means they must be
 a) careful b) careless c) polite d) punctual
- Keep away from the danger zone. We use the suffix "....." to form the adjective from "danger".
 a) -or b) -ion c) -ful d) -ous
- Nourhan finished her task early. The word "....." gives the same meaning as "finish".
 a) complete b) allow c) start d) respect
- After they finish their games, children must put their toys
 a) on b) a way c) up d) away

Reading Text

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What instructions do your parents give you at home?
- 2 What instructions do teachers give you at school?

 Read the conversation between the **school principal**⁽¹⁾ and three students (Ali, Osama, and Anwar) on the first day of school.

SB page 94

School principal Good morning, students. Welcome to our school!

Ali Good morning, sir.

School principal Please, remember to be **on time**⁽²⁾ every day. Classes start at eight o'clock sharp.

Osama Yes, sir. What should we do if we are late?

School principal If you are late, go to the office and **sign**⁽³⁾ your name before going to class.

Anwar Okay, sir.

School principal Don't run in the **hallways**⁽⁴⁾ and always keep your classrooms clean.

Ali Sure, we will.

School principal And don't **forget**⁽⁵⁾—respect your teachers and your friends.

All Students Yes, sir. Thank you for your instructions!



(1) مدير المدرسة

(2) في الوقت المحدد

(3) يوقع الاسم

(4) ممرات

(5) ينسى

Post-reading questions:

1 What time do the classes start?

.....

2 What should students do if they arrive late to school?

.....

3 Why do you think it is important to respect both teachers and friends?

.....

LESSONS 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The poster Menna created was and easy to read.
 a) eye-catching b) boring c) interested d) cautious
2. We had to our names on the form استمارة before we could join.
 a) sign b) think c) forget d) erase
3. Students should walk quietly in the during class time.
 a) hallways b) forests c) kitchens d) skies
4. Before the exam, the teacher always instructions carefully.
 a) gives b) keeps c) draws d) plays
5. Maha cares for her siblings. To get the adjective of "care", you add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ful b) -ness c) -ment d) -er
6. Please, keep your room tidy. "Tidy" has the same meaning as ".....".
 a) messy b) far c) neat d) close
7. You should with house chores every day.
 a) let b) help c) avoid d) complain
8. To form the antonym of the word "polite", we can add the prefix ".....".
 a) un- b) dis- c) im- d) in-
9. The school principal expects all students to the rules.
 a) do b) follow c) forget d) change
10. After lunch, please your dishes in the sink.
 a) put away b) turn on c) break down d) throw up

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

at – safe – hallways – sign – on

Welcome to our school! It's important to come (1) time every day. Classes start at 8:00 a.m. If you are late, please go to the office and (2) your name. Don't run in the (3) and keep your classrooms clean. Always respect your teachers and friends. These rules help everyone enjoy a (4) and happy school environment. Let's follow them together!



How to write a "School Rules Poster"

كيفية كتابة منشور عن القواعد المدرسية

Be on time:

كن في الوقت المحدد:

- Students must arrive at school on time every day.

Respect your teachers and classmates:

احترم معلميك وزملاءك في الفصل:

- They should always listen to and respect their teachers.

Keep the classroom clean:

حافظ على نظافة الفصل الدراسي:

- Students must keep their desks and classroom tidy.

No running in the hallways:

لا يجوز الجري في الممرات:

- Students should walk quietly in the hallways, not run.

Raise your hand to speak:

ارفع يدك لتتكلم:

- They should raise their hand and wait to speak in class.

Follow school uniform rules:

اتبع قواعد الزي المدرسي الرسمي:

- Students must wear the school uniform properly.

اقرأ هذا النموذج العجيب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

Writing Tips

To write a good poster, you should

Choose a Clear Title ضع عنوانًا واضحًا

• Make it short, big, and eye-catching

Use Short Sentences استخدم جملًا قصيرة

• Posters should be easy to read quickly. Avoid long paragraphs.

Add Bullet Points or Lists ضع قوائم نقطية

• Show important rules, steps, or ideas in points so readers remember them.

Use Imperatives (Command Forms)

استعمل صيغة الأمر

• Example: Eat more fruit. /Don't waste energy.

Make it Attractive اجعله جذابًا

• Use colors, big writing, and maybe pictures or symbols (if allowed).

Check Spelling and Grammar

تأكد من الهجاء والقواعد

• Mistakes can make your poster look less serious.

"School Rules Poster"

- **Be on time:** Arrive at school and class on time every day.
- **Respect everyone:** Be kind and respectful to teachers, staff, and classmates.
- **Keep it clean:** Always keep the classroom and school clean.
- **Listen carefully:** Pay attention when others are speaking and raise your hand to talk.
- **No running:** Walk safely in the hallways.
- **Do your homework:** Complete your assignments واجباتك on time and do your best.
- **Follow the uniform rules:** Wear the school uniform.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- food with others teaches people kindness.
a) Sharing b) Talking c) Forgetting d) Giving
- You should always be responsible and water.
a) waste b) save c) bring d) let
- It's dangerous to run in the hallways. The synonym of "dangerous" is ".....".
a) kind b) safe c) difficult d) risky
- Mayar keeps her room organized and tidy. The antonym of "tidy" is
a) clean b) smart c) messy d) neat

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

proud – away – out – washes – chores

Omar is a helpful boy. He always helps with (1)..... around the house. He sweeps the floor, (2)..... the dishes, and helps his mom with cooking. After doing homework, Omar always puts his books (3)..... . He believes that helping at home is important because it makes the house look nice and keeps everyone happy. His family appreciates his efforts and he feels (4)..... to help.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- Manal drinks a lot of tea every day. (many cups)
.....
- I have many tasks to do at home. (homework)
.....
- Adel needs some money to buy a new jacket. (doesn't)
.....
- Salma bought no books. (any)
.....

4 Complete the following dialog:

Rana and Reem are talking about school rules.

Rana : Can you tell me the school rules, Reem?

Reem: Yes, of course. We must be (1)..... time for class.

Rana : What do you do to (2)..... the classroom clean?

Reem: I always put my things away before I leave.

Rana : Is there (3)..... else?

Reem: We mustn't (4)..... in the hallways.

Rana : Thanks, I'll be careful next time.

5 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"School rules"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Do you need milk? (a glass)

.....

2. I have a lot of kind friends. (many)

.....

3. If you want coffee, I will bring you some. (Would ...?)

.....

4. I made no mistakes. (didn't make)

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة فى المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
careful	حريص	tidy	مترتب
dangerous	خطير	focused	مركز
finish	ينهى	patience	الصبر

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الأسئلة الأساسية فى القطعة هو السؤال عن معنى كلمة فى القطعة ويكون السؤال كالتالى:

للإجابة على هذا السؤال عليك اتباع الخطوات الآتية: **What does the underlined word "....." mean?**

a) Read the sentences around the word:

(أ) اقرأ الجمل حول الكلمة:

- Look at the context where the word appears. The words around it usually give you clues about its meaning.

- انظر إلى السياق الذى تظهر فيه الكلمة. الكلمات المحيطة بها تعطيك أدلة عن معناها.

b) Think about the tone of the text:

(ب) فكر فى نغمة النص:

- The tone (serious, happy, sad, etc.) helps you figure out how the word is used. For example, if the text is sad, the word might mean something related to sadness.

- النغمة (مثل الجدية أو الحزن) تساعدك فى فهم كيف يتم استخدام الكلمة. على سبيل المثال، إذا كان النص حزياً، قد تعنى الكلمة شيئاً متعلقاً بالحزن.

c) Use clues from the text:

(ج) استخدم الأدلة من النص:

- Sometimes the author gives examples or use other words that explain the word's meaning.

- أحياناً، يعطى الكاتب أمثلة أو يستخدم كلمات أخرى توضح معنى الكلمة.

FOR EXAMPLE:

"Even though she was tired, Sarah remained unaffected by the loud noise outside."

- What does the underlined word "unaffected" mean?

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- **Don't run in the hallways and always keep your classrooms clean.**

- لا تجر فى الممرات ودائماً حافظ على نظافة فصولك.
- لا تجر فى الممرات ودائماً حافظ على نظافة مدرستك.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- **تساعد سارة فى الأعمال المنزلية حيث تقوم بغسل الأطباق وتعد مائدة الطعام.**

- Sara helps to the chores as she washes the dishes and sets the table.
- Sara helps with the chores as she washes the dishes and sets the table.

Unit 12 Review

Vocabulary

respect (ed)	يحترم/احترام
politeness	الأدب
chance	فرصة
explain (ed)	يشرح
treat (ed)	يعامل
interrupt (ed)	يتقاطع/يعرقل
kindness	العطف
patience	الصبر
friendships	صداقات
balanced	متوازن
stress	الضغط
teenager	مراهق
hygiene	النظافة الشخصية
surroundings	الأشياء المحيطة بنا
well-being	الصحة العامة/العافية
grand	ضخم/عظيم
modesty	التواضع
sign	علامة
hospitality	الكرم

Language

Countable & Uncountable Nouns

1- Countable nouns

الأسماء التي تُعد

الأسماء التي تُعد هي الأشياء التي تُعد واحدة
تلو الأخرى

a boy (boys) – a car (cars) –
child (children) – a man (men)

2- Uncountable nouns

الأسماء التي تُعد

الأسماء التي لا تُعد هي الأشياء التي لا يمكن
أن تُعد بشكل منفصل

rice – meat – sugar – water – milk – news
– money – advice – information – paper
– تستخدم

(a/an/many/some/any/a lot of):

مع الأسماء التي تُعد

- e.g. • Adel ate **an** ice cream.
• There are **some** books on the desk.
– تستخدم

(much/some/any/a lot of):

مع الأسماء التي لا تُعد

- e.g. • **Much** money is needed for the project.
• I don't have **any** information.

Skills

A. Speaking

How to be a good student

- What are the rules I should follow to be a good student?
 - You should always pay attention in class and listen carefully to the teacher. It's important to stay focused and participate actively in discussions.
- How can I keep up with my homework?
 - You should organize your time well. Make a schedule and study regularly.
- What should I do if I don't understand something?
 - You can raise your hand and ask your teacher.
- How should I behave?
 - You should respect your teachers and your classmates.

B. Writing

"How to live a healthy life"

Living a healthy life is all about making responsible choices. First, eating a balanced diet with fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and proteins is essential for strong body functions. Drinking water instead of sugary drinks is also important. Staying active through activities like walking, running, or sports helps keep our heart and muscles strong while reducing stress. Getting at least eight hours of sleep every night helps us stay focused and energized. Lastly, taking care of our mental health, such as limiting screen time and spending time with loved ones, is key to overall well-being.

A Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should always show to older people.
a) respect b) impoliteness c) courage d) fear
2. Good can help you keep your body healthy.
a) respect b) study c) hygiene d) work
3. After winning the first prize, we felt
a) sad b) proud c) sleepy d) nothing
4. His was caused by a virus.
a) respect b) attention c) illness d) hygiene
5. You need to read more to keep your health.
a) mental b) metal c) body d) arm

B Language

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I have friends in my new school.
a) much b) many c) any d) a lot
2. Would you like water before we leave?
a) a b) an c) some d) any
3. I saw elephant in the zoo.
a) a b) an c) some d) any
4. He didn't bring books today.
a) any b) some c) a d) an
5. There isn't time before we finish the test.
a) much b) an c) some d) many

C Writing

3 Write a paragraph of about (80-100) about:

"The importance of following school rules"

.....

.....

.....

A

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

- The student will not raise their hand before speaking. (.....)
- The student believes that respect builds strong friendships. (.....)

B) Listen again and complete:

- The student should bring their
- Students should treat their classmates and teachers with
- Understanding starts with attention.

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Don't use your phone during lessons to avoid
 a) friendships b) classmates c) distractions d) corrections
- Good, like washing your hands before meals, can prevent the spread of diseases.
 a) hygiene b) study c) eating d) exercise
- It's important to be active in class by participating *المشاركة* in discussions. "Active" is a synonym of
 a) inactive b) lazy c) energetic d) polite
- There's so much sugar in this tea. To form the adjective of "sugar", add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ment b) -ness c) -y d) -ly

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

respect – lazy – listen – engage – organized

Do you want to be a good student? It is important to stay (1)..... and focused to do your homework. Always (2)..... in class discussions and ask questions if you don't understand something. You should (3)..... carefully to your teacher and take notes to help you remember key points. Finally, treat others with (4)..... and stay positive toward learning.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Malak is a responsible girl who helps her family with house chores every day. She always sets the table for dinner and makes sure everything is in order. Malak enjoys keeping the house clean, so she dusts the house regularly. After dinner, she helps clear the table *ترفع الأطباق من المائدة* and **places** everything back where it belongs. Her parents appreciate her hard work and thank her for making the house look neat and tidy. Malak knows that helping with chores is important because it teaches her responsibility and teamwork.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the text is "....."
 - Malak enjoys playing outside with friends.
 - Malak dusts the furniture regularly.
 - Malak helps with house chores.
 - Malak's parents appreciate her hard work.
- The underlined word "**places**" means
 - to give up
 - to put something in order
 - to look at something carefully
 - to take something away

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why is it important to keep the house "in order"?
.....
- How does Malak's family feel about her helping with chores?
.....
- How can helping with chores teach responsibility and teamwork?
.....

C The Story

5 A) Write True (T) or False (F):

- Dummling became a wise and gentle prince after his marriage. (.....)
- The tale of the golden goose teaches that wealth is found in gold. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why did the king allow Dummling to marry the princess?
.....
- Do you believe that Dummling would have achieved success without the golden goose? Why?
.....



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The lazy student answered no questions. (didn't answer)

.....

2. Peter is a student from Italy. (an Italian)

.....

3. She put some sugar in the tea. (a spoonful)

.....

4. Yesterday, Dad bought a lot of milk. (any)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Mr. Ali is giving Sami some useful advice.

Sami : What can I do to keep fit?

Mr. Ali : You should (1)..... healthy food.

Sami : What about (2).....?

Mr. Ali : Hygiene is very important for keeping our bodies healthy.

Sami : What (3)..... should I do?

Mr. Ali : You should do some (4).....

Sami : I really like walking in the morning.

Mr. Ali : Great! It's very useful to do more sports.

8 Write a text of NINETY (90) words on:

"Home rules"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Very high mountains can be described as
 a) fog b) misty c) towering d) golden
2. Amr is scared of thunder. To form the adjective of "thunder", add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ous b) -ed c) -ing d) -less
3. The rain made the streets wet. The word "wet" can mean ".....".
 a) moist b) dry c) waterless d) limited
4. The Amazon rainforest is known its incredible biodiversity and tall, green trees.
 a) to b) for c) from d) across
5. Early in the morning, a light often covers the valley like a soft gray blanket.
 a) fog b) steam c) rain d) roar
6. A plant that eats insects, such as the, is both fascinating and unusual.
 a) starfish b) giraffe c) Venus flytrap d) bamboo
7. A good teacher creates new ways to help his students. The verb "create" becomes a noun when we remove the "e" and add the suffix ".....".
 a) -or b) -ion c) -ive d) -ly
8. Sailors looked at the endless ocean in silence. The word "endless" can be replaced with ".....".
 a) limited b) limitless c) little d) small
9. Hadeer solved the problem, which made everyone respect her.
 a) rudely b) wisely c) amazed d) interesting
10. Many animals, like the camel, adapted the harsh conditions of the desert.
 a) about b) from c) to d) into
11. A/An smile can make new students feel comfortable.
 a) welcoming b) angry c) bad d) excited
12. If something is amazing, it is wonderful; its opposite is
 a) fascinating b) ordinary c) fantastic d) competitive
13. Tiny drops of water in the air that reduce visibility are called
 a) steam b) mist c) rain d) snow

14. Smoke began to in the sky creating thick clouds.
 a) rise b) drop c) run d) forget
15. The desert is home many animals that live there.
 a) to b) over c) on d) with

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. This book is interesting, but that book is very interesting. (more)

2. She put a lot of sugar in this tea. (much)

3. My brother has a great number of friends at school. (many)

4. Cairo is big, but London is very big. (bigger)

5. There are some apples in the bowl. (an)

6. Basma bought a lot of snacks for the party. (didn't buy)

7. Today's exercise is easier than yesterday's. (more difficult)

8. Mesbah has an orange in his bag. (two)

9. That was a very exciting movie. (the most)

10. There aren't any chairs in the room. (some)

11. My bag is heavy, but your bag is heavier. (heavier than)

12. They didn't find much information about the project. (many pieces)

13. It's a cold day today, but yesterday was colder. (than)

14. I saw some birds in the tree. (a)

15. She doesn't have many pencils. (some)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

oasis – dunes – cold – sunny – palm

Last week, my family visited a beautiful place in the vast desert. The weather was very hot and (1)..... all day long. We saw many high sand (2)..... that looked like big yellow mountains. In the middle of the desert, we found a green (3)..... full of life. It had fresh water and many tall (4)..... trees. We sat under the trees and ate delicious dates for lunch.

B)

table – angry – dust – chores – responsible

I like to help my parents inside our house every Friday. Doing household (1)..... makes me feel very happy and useful. My mother asks me to (2)..... the old furniture in the living room carefully. My sister helps to set the (3)..... for our big family dinner. My parents say that we are very (4)..... children. We feel proud when we keep our home clean and tidy.

4 Complete the following dialogs:

A) Youssef likes the dolphin most.

Hana : Tell me about an amazing animal.

Youssef : I like the smart blue (1)..... .

Hana : (2)..... does the dolphin usually live?

Youssef : It lives in the deep ocean.

Hana : (3)..... is the dolphin so special?

Youssef : It is friendly and loves to play.

Hana : How does it stay safe there?

Youssef : It (4)..... fast with its friends.

B) Mazen and Jana are talking about Siwa Oasis, in the Western Desert.

Jana : Have you ever been to Siwa Oasis?

Mazen : No, I haven't. Is it far away from here?

Jana : Yes, it is in the Western (1)..... .

Mazen : (2)..... can we see in Siwa Oasis?

Jana : We can see (3)..... palm trees there.

Mazen : That's wonderful! How (4)..... we go there?

Jana : We can go by bus.

Mazen : I'll visit it one day.

Review 4

LESSON



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the audio, and do the following tasks:

A) Write True (T) or False (F):

1. Forests are home to many animals. (.....)
2. Oceans cover only a small part of the Earth. (.....)
3. The text says insects are not important. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Think of ways we can protect the Earth in our daily life.
.....
5. Why is it important for everyone to work together to protect the environment?
.....

2 Complete the following dialog:

Lina and Omar are talking about how to help people.

Lina : I think it's important to help other people when we can.

Omar : (1).....

Lina : (2).....?

Omar : Yes. Yesterday I helped my neighbor with her groceries.

Lina : That's nice! I usually help my little brother with his homework.

Omar : That's great. Helping others (3).....

Lina : (4).....?

Omar : Helping others makes me feel happy.

3 Fill in the spaces with words from the box:

hygiene – warmly – powerful – landmark – politeness

1. Showing to others makes conversations more pleasant.
2. Good is important for staying healthy every day.
3. She greeted us when we arrived at her house.
4. His speech was so that everyone listened carefully.
5. The old clock tower is a famous in our city.

4 Write a poster of (80 – 90) words about “The rules students should follow during the next school trip”.

.....
.....

LESSON

2

1 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A sense of responsibility is an important quality that helps people make good choices. Responsible individuals think carefully before acting, and they understand how their actions affect others. For example, students show responsibility by completing their homework on time and helping classmates when needed. At home, responsibility can mean taking care of younger siblings, keeping shared spaces clean, or following family rules. In the community, responsible people respect public property and follow safety guidelines to protect everyone. Responsibility also includes admitting mistakes and trying to fix them. When people act responsibly, they build trust with others and create a safer, more positive environment. Developing a strong sense of responsibility is an important step toward becoming a reliable and caring person.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Responsible individuals think carefully before
a) reading b) acting c) sleeping d) laughing
2. Students show responsibility by completing their homework
a) slowly b) loudly c) on time d) in groups

B) Answer the following questions:

3. According to the text, how do responsible students behave at school?
4. What are two ways someone can show responsibility at home?
5. Why is admitting mistakes an important part of responsibility?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When the teacher is explaining something important, students should attention.
a) take b) pay c) give d) send
2. The hikers stood quietly, looking up at the trees around them.
a) tiny b) weak c) broken d) towering
3. Animals must to changes in their environment to survive.
a) adapt b) copy c) forget d) remove

4. We should always others, even when we disagree with them.
 a) ignore b) disturb c) respect d) blame
5. Working with young children requires a lot of
 a) noise b) patience c) fear d) speed
6. I think it rain tomorrow, so take an umbrella.
 a) will b) do c) did d) has
7. Mount Everest is mountain in the world.
 a) the highest b) highest c) high d) higher
8. We don't have sugar left in the kitchen.
 a) some b) any c) a d) an
9. I would like water, please.
 a) a b) an c) some d) many
10. This book is than the one I bought last month.
 a) cheaper b) cheapest c) cheap d) the cheapest

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. My friend isn't as tall as my brother. (than)

2. She doesn't have many friends. (some)

3. No other car in the race is faster than this one. (the fastest)

The Story

4 A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the princess laugh for the first time?
2. What did Dummling do to marry the princess?
3. Why is Dummling considered a wise and gentle prince by the end of the story?

B) Write True (T) or False (F):

4. Dummling made the princess laugh for the first time. (.....)
5. The king refused to let Dummling marry his daughter even after he completed the challenge. (.....)
6. The story teaches that true wealth lies only in gold. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about (80 – 100) words on the following:

"How to help your parents"

.....

Listening Texts

Unit 7 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Last week, Egypt had a very big party. It was the Pharaohs' Golden Parade in Cairo. Twenty-two royal mummies moved to a new home. They moved from the old museum to the new museum. The cars looked like old gold boats. Many people watched the parade on TV. It was a beautiful night. Everyone was happy to see the famous kings and queens.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

The Golden Parade was amazing for all Egyptians. Ancient kings moved through the streets of Cairo. The parade had very bright lights and music. The mummies were inside special cars. These cars kept the mummies safe. They went to the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization. It is a very big place. The whole world watched this special event on their screens.

Unit 8 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Ahmed really likes to help his mom at home every single Friday. He usually cleans his messy bedroom in the morning. After that, he goes outside and waters the green plants in the garden. His sister Laila washes the dishes after lunch. They work together to make the house look clean. Their mom is very happy because her children are helpful.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 8

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Sara loves to do tasks at home on the weekend. She helps her dad cook a delicious lunch for the family. She cuts the fresh vegetables carefully. Her brother Omar feeds their small cat. He also sweeps the dusty floor in the living room. They enjoy helping their parents very much. It is good to share the work at home.

Unit 9 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Hazem is very hungry today. He wants to make a big falafel sandwich. First, he gets some hot bread from the kitchen. Next, he puts four falafel balls inside the bread. He adds fresh green salad and red tomatoes. Finally, he puts some tahini on top. It tastes very yummy. Hazem loves eating this healthy food for his breakfast every single morning.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 9

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Laila goes to the shop to buy some food. She wants the best falafel sandwich in town. The man gives her fresh bread. He puts hot falafel and green salad inside. Laila likes spicy sauce on her food. She pays five pounds for the sandwich. She eats it quickly because she is late for school. It is the best breakfast for her.

Review 3

Listen to the audio, then choose the correct answer:

Last weekend, I visited the Grand Egyptian Museum, and it was an unforgettable experience. The building itself is modern and stunning, with wide open spaces full of natural light. I saw beautifully displayed artifacts, including statues of pharaohs and treasures from King Tutankhamun's tomb. The interactive screens made history easy to understand. The visit helped me appreciate Egypt's rich past and made me want to return soon.

Unit 10 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Yesterday, Salma found a small cat in the street. The cat was hungry and cold. Salma took the cat home. She gave it some warm milk and food. The cat drank the milk quickly. Now, the cat lives

with Salma and plays in the garden. Her mom is happy too. It is good to help animals. Salma loves her new friend very much.

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 10

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Last week, Ahmed saw an old woman carrying heavy bags. She looked very tired and walked slowly. Ahmed ran to help her immediately. He carried the bags to her house. The woman smiled and thanked him. She gave him a sweet apple. Ahmed felt very happy because he helped someone. Kindness makes everyone feel good. It is important to be kind to people every day.

Unit 11 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Last summer, Adam and Hoda went to a big green forest. They saw many tall trees and beautiful colorful flowers everywhere. The small birds were singing happy songs in the sunny morning. They also saw a long blue river near the camp. The water was very clean and cold. They played near the water and ate a nice lunch. They were very happy to see nature.

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 11

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

My name is Salma. I love nature very much. Yesterday, I went to the Red Sea with my family. We swam in the blue water. We saw many bright fish and some coral reefs. The weather was hot and sunny. My brother Ali played on the yellow sand. We saw a big dolphin jumping in the water. It was a wonderful day for everyone.

Unit 12 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

At my home, we have some important rules. I must make my bed every morning and finish my homework before playing games. I'm not allowed to stay up late on school nights. We

should help our parents with chores and keep the house clean. Everyone must respect each other and speak politely. Following these rules makes our home happy, safe, and comfortable for all family members.

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 12

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

To be a good student, I will always bring my materials, so I can follow lessons and learn better. I will raise my hand before speaking to show respect and give others a chance to share. I will listen carefully when the teacher is explaining, because understanding starts with paying attention. I will treat my classmates and teachers with kindness, patience, and politeness because respect builds strong friendships.

Review 4

Listen to the audio, and do the following tasks:

The natural world is full of amazing sights. Forests provide homes for thousands of animals, while oceans cover most of our planet and contain many different kinds of life. Even small creatures, like insects, play an important role in keeping nature balanced. When people protect the environment, the natural world becomes healthier and stronger for future generations.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 7

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Ayman has to clean his room right now.
2. Rania should read a book.
3. We must water the plants to grow.
4. In the museum, you mustn't touch the paintings.

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. We mustn't feed the animals at the zoo.
2. My dad has to work on his computer.
3. You should be polite to your friends.
4. Inside the gas station, you mustn't turn on/ use your phone.

Lessons 5 & 6

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. You mustn't throw plastic bottles into the clean river.
2. Khaled has to fix his broken toy.
3. Students should ask questions in the class.
4. You must brush your teeth before bed.

Unit 8

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. That is our bag.
2. Her scarf is purple.
3. This is his ball.
4. Our new house is big and high.

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The shoes outside are theirs.
2. Our old photo album is on the shelf.
3. This coat is his.
4. The cookies are theirs.

Lessons 5 & 6

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. These sunglasses are ours.
2. Sama looked for her toy.
3. Our new car is smart.
4. The bag on the chair is hers.

Unit 9

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The rabbit's ears are long and very funny.
2. The roof of the house is wide.
3. The students' pencils are on the table.
4. Mr. Taher's house is in New Cairo.

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The boys' shirts are blue and white.
2. The screen of the laptop is bright and very clear.
3. Jana's new doll is sitting on the bed.
4. The bird's nest is high in the tree.

Lessons 5 & 6

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The glass of the window is broken and very sharp.
2. Hany's watch is expensive and very shiny.
3. The bear's fur is thick and very warm.
4. The leg of the chair is broken. We need a carpenter.

Unit 10

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Marwan won't forget to do his English homework.
2. Next summer, we will go to the beach to swim.
3. Perhaps my uncle will visit tonight.
4. Laila will wear a pretty dress to the party tonight.

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Will you help me with this heavy box?
2. My dad won't buy a new video game.
3. Our team won't lose the game.

Lessons 5 & 6

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Will you send me the homework notes later?
2. Rania will help her mother with the dishes.
3. My hands are dirty; I will wash them now.
4. My brother will fix my broken toy after school.

Unit 11

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Monday was the coldest day.
2. Rami's idea is the smartest.
3. Watching movies is less interesting than reading books.
4. No boy is taller than Tamer.

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The river is the most fascinating wonder.
2. Fatma is the kindest of her friends.
3. The milk is warmer than the ice cream.

Lessons 5 & 6

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Your sweater is thinner than my jacket.
2. Ali's score is worse than mine.
3. That jacket is more expensive than this shirt.
4. Hisham is the laziest one.

Unit 12

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I need to buy a bottle of milk.
2. It's not healthy to drink many cups of coffee.
3. A rabbit likes carrots.
4. We don't have any seats left.

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Please, give me a glass of water.
2. You've given a wonderful idea.
3. How many cousins does Samir have?
4. Sara bought many kilos of rice.

Lessons 5 & 6

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Do you need a glass of milk?
2. I have many kind friends.
3. Would you like some coffee?
4. I didn't make any mistakes.

رقم الإيداع: 2025/33379

خدمة العملاء: 16766



NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE

جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية وحقوق المؤلف لهذا الكتاب

مملوكة لدار نهضة مصر للنشر

يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين

أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير

أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابي صريح من الناشر.

(اللغة الإنجليزية / الصف الأول الإعدادي)

معاك الكتاب معاك الـ APP

نزل تطبيق الأضواء



2

سجّل



1

نزل



4

احصل على منهجك
التفاعلي مجاناً



3

أدخل كودك الشخصي



اسم الطالب: _____
العنوان: _____
البريد الإلكتروني: _____
الهاتف/ المحمول: _____
المحافظة: _____
المدرسة: _____
الإدارة التعليمية: _____
اسم مدرس المادة: _____
الـ كـود: _____



لغة إنجليزية / ع 1 / 2026

f X /aladwaa

ALADWAA
Gem





استمتع برحلة تعليمية تفاعلية

شاهد فيديوهات

1 لفهم دروسك بشكل مبسط وسهل
كل ما عليك هو مسح رمز QR الموجود
بجوار «ذاكر» في بداية كل درس.



التدريبات والاختبارات الإلكترونية

2 لحل تدريبات واختبارات أكثر على كل درس..
امسح رمز QR الموجود بجوار «تدرب»
ببداية تدريبات كل درس.



100% إجابات

3 راجع إجاباتك من خلال مسح QR الخاص
بـ«100% إجابات» الموجود بالصفحة الأولى.



Free Gifts

- Ongoing Assessment & Final Revision
- Your Personal Code

احرص على اقتناء الأضواء في:

- اللغة العربية
- الرياضيات
- العلوم
- الدراسات الاجتماعية
- التربية الإسلامية

معك الكتاب معك APP



نزل تطبيق الأضواء



16766



L.E.190

6



221133000901